

Using This Manual

Function & Service Search

Contents→
Index: Try searching by various terms.....→

Page vi
Page 14-26

Objective Search

Objective Search.....→
Index→

Page ii
Page 14-26

Function Search

Feature Search→
Contents→

Page iv
Page vi

Display Indicators

Display Indicators.....→
Menu Operations→

Page 1-5
Page 2-2

Manual Overview

Contents→
Chapter Contents: First page of each chapter.....→

Page vi
Page 1-1~14-1

Solving Problems

Troubleshooting→
Warranty & After Sales Service.....→

Page 14-7
Page 14-40

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Call	3
Messaging	4
Internet	5
TV	6
Camera/Picture Editing	7
Media Player/S! Appli	8
Tools	9
Communication Services	10
Security	11
File Transfer/Backup	12
Customization	13
Appendix	14

Objective Search

Using Handset Phone Number/Mail Address

Checking Handset Number

Check your phone number on the handset.

Checking Your Phone Number
⇒ Page 3-3

Customizing Mail Address

Customizing handset address can help reduce spam.

Customizing Handset Address
⇒ Page 4-3

Customizing Handset

Ringtone

Select a music file, movie file or Chaku-Uta® from ringtone settings.

Ringtone ⇒ Page 13-11

Downloading Chaku-Uta®

Download your favorite songs from the Chaku-Uta® site.

Obtaining Music and Videos
⇒ Page 8-3

Understanding Basics

Basic Operations

Using keys and accessing functions.

Softkeys and Multi Selector ⇒ Page xi
Menu Operations ⇒ Page 2-2

Making Calls

Make voice/video calls. Use call functions such as Speed Dial or Answering Machine.

Voice Call ⇒ Page 3-4
Video Call ⇒ Page 3-7

Using Advanced Features

Watching TV

Watch One Seg Digital TV on handset. No additional fees required.

TV ⇒ Page 6-2

Listening to Music

Use Media Player to listen to downloaded music.

Media Player ⇒ Page 8-2

Saving Address to Handset

Saving your new address to My Details is convenient for exchanging information with others.

My Details ⇒ Page 3-12

Sharing Address with Friends

Share your new address by sending a message to multiple addresses simultaneously.

**Sending Messages ⇒ Page 4-4, Page 4-6
Adding Recipients ⇒ Page 4-13**

Sharing Address via Infrared

Share your e-mail address by infrared transfer. Save your e-mail address prior to transfer.

Infrared ⇒ Page 12-14

Standby Display

Set images captured with handset camera as wallpaper.

**Wallpaper ⇒ Page 2-6
Picture Editing ⇒ Page 7-8**

Changing Font Size

Change font size for menus and web pages. Font color pattern can also be changed.

**Setting the Font Size
⇒ Page 13-5, Page 13-21**

Text Entry

Enter text when creating Phone Book entries or messages.

Text Entry ⇒ Page 2-9

S! Mail/SMS

Select S! Mail or SMS according to your purpose.

**S! Mail ⇒ Page 4-4
SMS ⇒ Page 4-6**

Accessing the Mobile Internet

Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.

Yahoo! Keitai ⇒ Page 5-3

Digital Camera/Digital Video

Shoot pictures and videos with handset camera.

**Taking Pictures ⇒ Page 7-3
Recording Videos ⇒ Page 7-5**

Using Handset as a Gaming Device

Play preinstalled S! Appli games or download games from Yahoo! Keitai.

S! Appli ⇒ Page 8-8

Using Handset as a Wallet

Payments are quick and easy without needing small change. Just hold the handset up to a reader/writer at checkout counters.

**Osaifu-Keitai® ⇒ Page 9-10
Calculator ⇒ Page 9-20**

Feature Search

921T Features

One Seg TV

921T supports One Seg Digital TV for mobile phones and information terminals. You can also browse data broadcast and record programs.

→Page 6-2

Bluetooth®

Files can be transferred using Bluetooth® communication.

→Page 12-5

SoftBank Features

Yahoo! Keitai Sites

A special portal site for SoftBank handsets is available to enhance your Internet browsing experience.

→Page 5-3

Arrange Mail/Feeling Mail

Send Arrange Mail (HTML mail) or Feeling Mail.

→Page 4-5

Convenient Features

Phone Book/S! Addressbook Back-up

Save contact information to Phone Book and back up data on S! Addressbook Server.

→Page 2-15, Page 12-12

Alarm/Event Schedule

Use the alarm to wake you in the morning. Save and manage event schedule on the calendar that can be interfaced with phone/mail functions.

→Page 9-4, Page 9-18

PC-related Features

PC Site Browser

View PC-based websites with PC Site Browser.

→Page 5-4

Document Viewer

Microsoft® Office Word, Excel and PDF files are all viewable with 921T. This is especially useful for business people.

→Page 9-24

3.24 Megapixel Camera

921T is equipped with a 3.24 megapixel camera.

→Page 7-2

MicroSD Memory Card

921T supports compact high-capacity microSD memory cards. This makes exchanging files with a PC quick and easy.

→Page 2-23

Electronic Books

Use BookSurfing® and e-Book Viewer to read e-books.

→Page 9-25

S! Town/S! Loop/S! Information Channel

These SoftBank-only communication services allow you to enjoy strolling in a virtual community, exchange information with friends or subscribe to various information services.

→Page 9-23, Page 10-2

S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

These two functions facilitate communication. Send your mood/availability to your friends and check their statuses, or talk to a group of people.

→Page 10-3, Page 10-6

S! GPS Navi

Use the GPS function to check your position on a map. This function can also guide you to your destination.

→Page 9-14

Barcode Reader

Access a variety of information such as e-mail addresses and URLs using QR codes.

→Page 9-26

Voice Recorder

Use 921T as a recorder. Save recordings to microSD memory card.

→Page 9-9

Optional Services

A complete line of services, including Call Forward and Voice Mail meet your phone needs.

→Page 3-10

Card Reader Mode

for use with PC

Use the enclosed USB cable to connect handset to a PC and access microSD memory card from the PC.

→Page 12-9

Transferring Music

for use with PC

Use the music software BeatJam 2008 for 921T to transfer music stored on a PC to your handset. The handset can now be used as a portable music player.

→Page 12-8

→BeatJam 2008 for 921T Guide Book

Contents

Introduction	viii
Package Contents	ix
Using This Manual	x
Safety Precautions	xii
General Notes	xxv
End User License Agreement	xxix
Trademarks and Patents	xxxii
SAR	xxxiv

1 Getting Started

Handset Parts & Functions	1-2
Display Indicators	1-5
Charging the Battery	1-8
Power On/Off	1-11
Date & Time	1-12
About Mobile Manners	1-13
Codes	1-14

2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations	2-2
Wallpaper/Active Window	2-6
Text Entry	2-9
Word List (Japanese)	2-14
Phone Book	2-15
Data Folder	2-20
Memory Card	2-23
Advanced Features	2-25

3 Call

Making Calls	3-2
Voice Call	3-4
Video Call	3-7
Call Log	3-9
Optional Services	3-10
Advanced Features	3-12

4 Messaging

Messaging	4-2
Sending Messages	4-4
Incoming Messages	4-8
Organizing/Using Messages	4-10
Advanced Features	4-13

5 Internet

Internet	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
Web Page Operations	5-5
Bookmarks/Saved Pages	5-6
Advanced Features	5-7

6 TV

TV	6-2
Watching TV	6-3

Recording/Playing Programs	6-6
View/Record Timer	6-7
Advanced Features	6-8

7 Camera/Picture Editing

Camera	7-2
Taking Pictures	7-3
Recording Videos	7-5
Camera Functions	7-7
Picture Editing	7-8
Advanced Features	7-10

8 Media Player/S! Appli

Playing Music and Videos	8-2
Playlists	8-7
S! Appli	8-8
Advanced Features	8-10

9 Tools

Tools	9-2
Calendar/Tasks	9-4
Time Table	9-7
Notepad	9-8
Voice Recorder	9-9
Osaifu-Keitai®	9-10
S! GPS Navi	9-14
Idokoro Mail	9-16

Alarms	9-18	Memory Card Backup	12-10	Specifications	14-11
World Clock	9-19	S! Addressbook Back-up	12-12	Default Settings	14-17
Calculator/Dictionary	9-20	Advanced Features	12-14	Glossary	14-25
Kitchen Timer	9-21			Index	14-26
S! Quick News	9-22			Warranty & After Sales Service	14-40
S! Information Channel	9-23			Customer Service	14-41
Document Viewer	9-24				
Electronic Books	9-25				
Barcode Reader	9-26				
Ku-man's Room (Japanese)	9-27				
Advanced Features	9-28				

10 Communication Services

S! Town (Japanese)/S! Loop (Japanese) ..	10-2
S! Friend's Status	10-3
S! Circle Talk	10-6
Advanced Features	10-9

11 Security

Changing Handset Code	11-2
Prohibiting/Limiting Use	11-3
Advanced Features	11-5

12 File Transfer/Backup

Infrared	12-2
Bluetooth®	12-4
PC Connection	12-8

13 Customization

Display Settings	13-2
Incoming Event Settings	13-9
Sound Settings	13-11
Mail Settings	13-14
Internet Settings	13-19
Call Settings	13-22
Camera Settings	13-25
TV Settings	13-28
Media Player Settings	13-31
S! Appli Settings	13-32
Reset	13-33
Text Entry/Phone Book	13-34
File Transfer	13-36
Various Tools	13-38
Communications	13-44

14 Appendix

USIM Card	14-2
Battery	14-4
Software Update	14-6
Troubleshooting	14-7
Text Entry Keys	14-9

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 921T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using the SoftBank 921T handset.
- After reading this manual, retain it for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

SoftBank 921T handset is compatible with the 3G system.

Caution

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (page 14-41).

The User Guide (Japanese) and Start Book (Japanese) included in the package are also available online from the SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website:
<http://www.softbank.jp/mb/tr/support/921t/>

Package Contents

- Handset
- USB Cable*¹
- First Step Guide
- Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (TSLAU2)
- Battery (TSBAR1)
- Start Book (Japanese)
- BeatJam 2008 for 921T Guide Book (Japanese)
- Battery Cover
- User Guide (Japanese)
- Utility Software for 921T (CD-ROM)*^{1*2}

*1 Complimentary sample not available for purchase.

*2 Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.

- Use only SoftBank specified AC Charger (sold separately) to charge battery.
- For information about AC Charger and other accessories, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (page 14-41).
- Battery is available for separate purchase.
- 921T accepts microSD Memory Card (not included). Purchase microSD Memory Card to use related functions.
- microSD Memory Card is referred to as "memory card" in this manual.

Using This Manual

In this manual, SoftBank 921T is referred to as "handset."

Chapters

Chapter 1 "Getting Started": Basic handset information.

Chapter 2 "Basic Operations": Basic handset operations.

Chapters 3 to 12: Handset functions. Each chapter starts with basic operation descriptions, followed by advanced operation descriptions.

Chapter 13: Handset settings.

Chapter 14 "Appendix": Default settings, Index, etc.

More Features



Creating Messages (▶ page 4-13)



Advanced features are listed under this icon. Refer to the indicated page to access "Advanced Features" at the end of the chapter.



Messaging Settings (▶ page 13-14)

- Add Recipients to Simple Input List



Available settings are listed here. Go to indicated page in Chapter 13 (Customization) for description.

Symbols

➡, ➡ and ▶ navigate you to the next action/item.

Press Center Key (●) to confirm your selection. Some operations are described in an abbreviated format.

Screenshots and Keys

Screenshots and key graphics are simplified to facilitate explanation. Actual appearance may differ.

Japanese Functions & Services

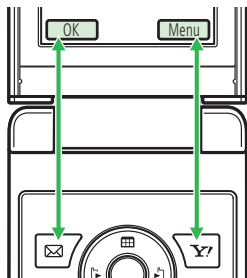
When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of function and service.



Display Position




Unless otherwise noted, descriptions in this manual are described in Clamshell Open position (page 1-4).

Softkeys

Use Softkeys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of the Display.








- Press  to select OK.
- Press  to access Option menu.

- Softkey operations vary by the current function.
- In this manual, Softkey operations are described as below.
⇒  / (OK) / ⇒  / ⇒ 

Multi Selector

The following notations are used to indicate Multi Selector operations.




Notation/Operation	Function
 Press up	Enables Active Window operations* Increases volume Moves cursor up
 Press down	Accesses Phone Book* Decreases volume Moves cursor down
 Press left	Accesses Dialed* Moves cursor left
 Press right	Accesses Received* Moves cursor right
 Press center	Accesses Main Menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the camera shutter-release

* Functions accessible from Standby can be changed by modifying the Navigation Keys settings (page 2-4).

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
- Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
- When a child uses the handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
- The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words. Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.





Pictographs

Pictograph	Meaning
 Danger	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury ¹ of the user.
 Warning	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury ¹ of the user.
 Caution	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury ² to the user or damage to property ³ .

¹ Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.

- 2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

Symbols

Symbol	Meaning
 Prohibited	 indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.
 Compulsory	 indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out. The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.

Limitation of Liability

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes, lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of SoftBank and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently, or use under other abnormal conditions.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by SoftBank and Toshiba.
- Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction, repair or other improper handling of the product. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.

Danger



No
disassembly

Do not disassemble, modify or repair the handset, battery, charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of the handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-41).



No flames

Do not dispose of the handset, battery, charger (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) in a fire or expose them to heat. If they are exposed to water, do not dry them artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



No flames

Do not charge, use or leave the handset, battery, charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) in hot places such as near a fire or heater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Danger



Keep water
away

Do not expose the handset, battery, charger (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) to fluids such as water, perspiration or seawater

Do not leave them outdoors, in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used
Do not place them near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If the handset is dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off the handset and remove the battery. If the handset, battery or charger is exposed to fluids such as water during charging, remove the power plug from the outlet immediately. Do not charge the wet battery. If the battery gets wet, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-41).



Prohibited

Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery into the handset or connecting the handset to the charger (sold separately)

Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not touch the battery terminal (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Doing so may cause the battery to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.



Compulsory

Do not use a battery other than one supplied with or designated for the handset

Do not use the battery for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Compulsory

Use the charger (sold separately) designated for the handset to charge the battery

Use the charger (sold separately) only for charging the handset's battery

Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Compulsory

If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery comes into contact with your skin or clothes, wash it immediately with clean water as this may hurt your body

And if it gets into your eyes, do not rub them, and have them immediately treated by an ophthalmologist after washing them with clean water
If the fluid sticks to the equipment, wipe it out without touching it directly

If the fluid is left as it is, your skin may get irritated or there may be fear of losing your sight.

Warning



Prohibited

Do not use the handset while driving
Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, TV, video, music, Mobile Light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.



Compulsory

Be sure to turn off your SoftBank handset before entering places such as gas stations where flammable gases may be produced

Also do not charge the handset in those places

The gases may be ignited.

Be sure to turn off the handset before using Osaifu-Keitai[®] compatible reader/writer within gas stations, etc. (When the IC Card Lock is set, turn off the handset after unlocking the setting.)



Prohibited

Do not swing the handset by its strap, TV Antenna, USB cable, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.



Compulsory

Turn off the handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves.



Unplug power cable

Remove the power plug from the outlet if the AC Charger (sold separately) is not to be used for a long period of time or before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Compulsory

Turn off the handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Failing to do so may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment and cause an accident.

Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.



Compulsory

Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take pictures, record videos or watch TV

Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident.

Warning



Do not use the handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage

Compulsory

Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for the AC Charger (sold separately) and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for the In-Car Charger (sold separately).



Wipe away any dust on the plug of the AC Charger (sold separately) with a dry cloth after removing the plug from the outlet

Compulsory

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.



Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices

Compulsory

- **Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags**
- **Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts**

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal, etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.



When thunder is heard outside, stop using the handset immediately

Compulsory

Turn off the handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using the handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.



If the battery fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately

Compulsory

Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-41).



When inserting the plug of the AC Charger (sold separately) into an AC household outlet, make sure that a metal strap or any other metal object does not touch the plug

Compulsory

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.

Warning



Compulsory

If something unusual happens to the handset, battery or charger (sold separately); for example, it emits smoke or an unusual odor or is damaged, perform the following steps immediately

1. If the battery is charging, unplug the AC Charger (sold separately) from the AC household outlet or unplug the In-Car Charger (sold separately) from the cigarette lighter socket.
2. Make sure that the handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery to overheat, rupture or catch fire or the handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-41).



Prohibited

Do not drop the handset or battery or subject it to excessive shock

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not sit down with the handset in your trousers pocket

Excess weight may damage the Display, battery or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury.



Compulsory

If the handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

Observe the following guidelines

1. If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use the handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted device.
2. Turn off the handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
 - Do not bring the handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
 - Turn off the handset in a hospital ward.
 - Turn off the handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
 - Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use the handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.

Warning

4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves.

The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).





Prohibited


Do not use the AC Charger (sold separately) with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply


Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.


Caution

 **Do not use or leave the handset or battery in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places such as inside a car in the sun**
Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.


 **Keep the handset, battery and charger (sold separately) away from infants and small children**
Failing to do so may result in the battery or memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.


 **Make sure that the terminals (metal parts) of the charger (sold separately) do not come into contact with wires or other metal objects**
Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.

 **Do not pull the cord when unplugging the AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately) from an AC household outlet or socket**
Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire. Hold the plug when unplugging the AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately).

 **Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of the AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger**
Do not damage or modify them
Do not place objects on them
Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters
Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

 **Do not plug or unplug the AC Charger (sold separately) with wet hands**
Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.

 **Keep magnetic cards away from the handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing the handset**
Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.

 **Do not use the handset in a vehicle if it affects in-vehicle electronic devices**
Use of the handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.

Caution



Prohibited

Do not place the handset on an unstable or unlevel surface

Doing so may result in the handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.



Prohibited

Do not dispose of the used battery with ordinary garbage

Insulate the terminal with tape and then dispose of the used battery separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



Prohibited

Do not touch the handset with sweaty hands or place it into a pocket of sweaty clothes

Sweat and humidity may erode the internal components of the handset and cause overheating or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not use the In-Car Charger (sold separately) when the car engine is not running

Doing so may result in a flat battery.



Compulsory

If the fuse for the In-Car Charger (sold separately) blows, replace it with a designated fuse

Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.

For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of the In-Car Charger (sold separately).



Compulsory

Use the handset in well-lighted places and with an appropriate distance between your eyes and its screen when you watch TV

Failing to do so may cause decreased vision.



Compulsory

Do not leave the TV Antenna extended except when using TV

Talking on the handset without retracting the TV Antenna may cause injury.



Prohibited

Do not remove the polyester film from Display and External Display

Using the handset without the polyester film to protect against shattering of the reinforced glass may result in an injury if Display or External Display is damaged.

Caution



If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using the handset and consult with a dermatologist

The following materials and surface treatments have been used for the handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

Compulsory

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
Outer housing (front face of Display section)	Magnesium alloy (acrylic baking coating)
Outer housing (lateral faces of Display section, hinge part on back face, keypad side, battery cover side, hinge cover part)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (back face of Display section)	Acrylic resin (in-mold UV foil)
Display panel	Tempered glass with polyester film (UV cured acrylic processing)
Screw covers (above Display panel, bottom side of Display)	PET film
Screw covers (battery cover side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Hinge clearance retainer	Polyurethane resin
Keypad (including clearance retainer part)	UV cured acrylic resin
Side keys	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Camera panel	Acrylic resin
Mobile Light	Acrylic resin
Camera/Video Indicator	Acrylic resin
Corner caps	Elastomer resin
Charging Indicator	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	Acrylic resin
Memory Card Slot cover	Elastomer resin, PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
External Device Port cover	Elastomer resin, PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Charging Terminal	Stainless steel (gold plating, nickel undercoat)
Screws	Steel (nickel coating)

Caution

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
TV Antenna (top part)	PC/ABS resin
TV Antenna (pullout part, top side)	PA resin
TV Antenna (pullout part, base side)	Stainless steel
TV Antenna (sleeve side)	Cadmium-less brass
TV Antenna (hinge part)	Stainless steel
Strap pin	Stainless steel (bright nickel coating)

Caution



Before using the handset, make sure that no metal objects (such as pins) are stuck to the Earpiece or

Compulsory Stereo Speakers

Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear or hand injury, etc.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings

Compulsory Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.



Do not use the Mobile Light for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting

Prohibited Doing so may harm the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.



Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on the handset during a video call or while charging using a USB connection, In-Car Charger (sold separately), AC Charger (sold separately), etc.

Prohibited Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.



Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Compulsory Do not use Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) continuously for long periods of time

Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing defect regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.



Do not insert objects other than the memory card into the Memory Card Slot

Prohibited Doing so may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Cover the slot with the cover at times other than when you are inserting or removing the memory card.



Keep your face away from the Memory Card Slot when inserting or removing the memory card
Keep the memory card out of the reach of small children

Prohibited If the memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.



Do not subject the memory card to vibration or shock or remove it from the slot or turn off the handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Prohibited Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Caution



Prohibited

Use only the memory card supported by the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

The handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of January 2008).



Prohibited

Do not let children use cables such as USB cable, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) unsupervised and keep cables out of infant's reach

An injury may be caused if, for instance, the cable is wrapped around a neck.



Prohibited

Do not point the infrared beam at anyone's eye during infrared communication

Doing so may cause eye damage.



Prohibited

Do not use the Mobile Light close to eyes

Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with the Mobile Light too close to the eyes of infants.



Prohibited

Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing the USIM Card

Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.



Prohibited

Use only a USIM Card designated for the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not bend the TV Antenna with excessive force

Doing so may result in damage or distortion of the TV Antenna and cause injury.



Compulsory

Be careful not to trap your fingers or objects when closing the handset and not to trap your fingers in the hinge when opening the handset

Failing to do so may cause injury or damage to the OLED Display.

General Notes

Using Your Handset

- The handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call or the TV image/sound may be suddenly cut off.
 - When using the handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of the handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theaters or on buses and trains.
 - The handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit the handset for inspection based on this law.
 - Use of the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
 - The handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
 - The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
 - The handset is exclusively for use in Japan. It cannot be used outside Japan.
 - Data stored on the handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions.
 - The handset is used improperly.
 - The handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
 - The handset is turned off during operation.
 - The battery is completely discharged.
 - The handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time. When the battery is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
 - Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
 - When the handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, the handset surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching the handset under such conditions.
 - When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take the handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if the handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else. Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking the handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).
- For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.
- If you use a hearing aid, handset usage may interfere with hearing aid performance. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aid.

Inside Vehicles

- Do not use the handset while driving. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Talking on the handset using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) while driving may be subject to penalties in some prefectures.
- Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

Aboard Aircraft

- Do not use the handset on an aircraft. Do not turn the handset on while you are on the aircraft. Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

Handling Basics

- Do not use the handset in extreme temperatures, direct sunlight and humid or dusty places.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- To clean the handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Avoid exposing the handset to rain, snow or high humidity. The handset, battery, charger (sold separately), Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) and other optional accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not remove the battery while handset power is on to avoid malfunction.
- If the battery has been removed from the handset or the handset has not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or altered. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damage or loss resulting from such negligence.

- The battery is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery designated for the handset.

- Do not dispose of batteries with municipal waste. Insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery in a plastic bag and take it to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.



Li-ion

- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a defect or malfunction. If the Display is left on for a long period of time, pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) is securely plugged into Earphone Microphone Jack. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately). Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing damage regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly when walking, resulting in an accident.
- When Earphone Microphone Jack, External Device Port and Memory Card Slot are not in use, make sure to replace the covers. Otherwise dust or water may enter the handset causing handset malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately). Pulling the cord may cause damage or malfunction.

- The communication antenna of the handset is built into the body and does not protrude. Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3). Do not cover this area by affixing stickers, or any other items. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- When you replace the handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored in the handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop the USIM Card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend the USIM Card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not allow the USIM Card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave the USIM Card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing the USIM Card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places. Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep the USIM Card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in the USIM Card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using the USIM Card, read the instruction manual of the USIM Card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- Do not put the handset into a bag or pocket without retracting the TV Antenna. Doing so may apply excessive force on the TV Antenna and result in damage.

OLED Display

- The handset uses an OLED (Organic Light Emitting Diode) display. The OLED display may develop dark areas or the colors may change if the same image is displayed for a long time, if the lighting is set brighter than necessary, or after it has been used for an excessively long time. However, these are characteristics of OLED displays and are not malfunctions.
- The OLED display is made with extremely advanced technology, but a very small number of pixels may remain dark or always lighted. Also, depending on the angle of view, the display may show a diagonal pattern of color, brightness distortion or color change. However, these are caused by the way OLED displays are made and are not malfunctions.
- Leaving the OLED display exposed to direct sunlight may damage it. Be careful when placing the handset outside or near windows.
- Icons at the top of Display turn off after the Display has been on for a certain period of time.

Functional Limitations

- After handset upgrade or subscription cancellation, the following functions become unavailable on the handset:
 - Camera
 - Digital TV
 - Media Player
 - S! Appli
- Above functions may become unavailable after long periods of not using the handset. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.
- Do not block the lens and brightness sensor with your fingers, strap or TV Antenna when shooting pictures or videos. Stow the TV Antenna in the handset when using the camera.

Mobile Light

- Do not use the Mobile Light in hot, cold or humid places. Doing so may shorten its life.
- The Mobile Light has a limited life. Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

About the Speaker

- Since the earpiece and speaker of this handset are close together, loud noise from the speaker may enter your ear directly during playback or call reception. You may suffer aural damage if your ears are subjected to loud noise. Be careful to hold the handset away from your ear during use.

Copyrights

- Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use the handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

Right of Portrait

- Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

End User License Agreement

TOSHIBA CORPORATION

IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

End User License Agreement

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset").

Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

1. **License Grant.** Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to create derivative works based on the Software.

2. **Copyright.** The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
3. **Reverse Engineering.** You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organization, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.
4. **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY.** The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. **TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER**

EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.

- 5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.**

PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES, ADDRESSES, PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE DELETED OR ERASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

6. Laws. This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan. All disputes arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Tokyo District Court.
7. Export Laws. Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
8. Third Party Beneficiary. You agree that certain suppliers of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as a user.

Trademarks and Patents

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations :

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784		



Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSD Logo is a trademark.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation © 2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.



The Bluetooth word mark and logo are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by TOSHIBA is under license.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpeg-la.com).



T9 Text Input is covered by Japan Pat.No. 特許 3532780,3492981 and other patents pending.


Chaku-Uta[®], Chaku-Uta Full[®] is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Copyright © 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.
Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT AND/OR BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT, ERIC YOUNG OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

 is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.



Edy is a brand name of the prepaid-type electronic money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Sky Mail, S! Mail, S! Appli, S! GPS Navi, S! Information Channel, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, PC Site Browser, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail, Navi appli, S! Quick News, S! Town, S! Loop, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail and Secure Remote Lock are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Copyright © 1995-2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

BookSurfing[®] is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY, Inc.

"SOFTBANK" SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO.,LTD. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
© 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.



This product uses OKAO™ Vision of OMRON Corporation.
"OKAO" and "OKAO Vision" are registered trademarks of OMRON Corporation in Japan.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo!//Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Microsoft, PowerPoint, Excel are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This 921T mobile phone complies with the technical standards for the absorption of radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the Japanese government. These technical standards, based upon scientific evidence, were established to ensure that RF energy from wireless mobile devices used next to the head do not have a serious effect on human health. The maximum Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which measures the average radio wave energy absorbed by the human head, set by the Japanese government is 2 W/kg*. This allowed value includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and stature. The value corresponds with the international guidelines prescribed by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with the World Health Organization (WHO).

All models of mobile phones are required to comply with the technical standards of Japan set forth in the Radio Law before being released for sale. The 921T has received construction design certification under the Radio Law with a SAR value of 0.139 W/kg. This maximum SAR value was determined by TÜV Rheinland Japan, Ltd. (registered certification agency) and the Telecom Engineering Center (measurement agency) at the maximum transmission power of this handset with measurement carried out conforming to the guidelines set by the Japanese government. Depending on the product, there may be minute differences in the SAR. However, they are within the allowed limits. During calling, the actual SAR is lower as the handset is designed to use the minimum transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network.

Additional information about SAR can be found at the website listed below.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications website:

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB) website:

<http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>

SoftBank website:

<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html>

Toshiba Mobile Phone website:

<http://www.toshiba.co.jp/product/etsg/cmt/>

* The technical guidelines are stipulated in the Ministerial Ordinance Related to the Radio Law (Wireless Equipment Regulations, Article 14-2).

About SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: Refers to the SAR of the maximum transmission power when continuously calling with the handset attached to the body and using an earphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Measured value of continuous calling at 6 minute intervals.

Our technical standards for body SAR include the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) standards and information from Europe. For more information see the sections on "FCC RF Exposure Information" and "European RF Exposure Information."

*** Placement on the body: Measurements were taken with the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the normal position of the handset. In order to maintain compliance with radio frequency (RF) exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

FCC RF Exposure Information

The guidelines established by the FCC are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed according to FCC standards for each model and the maximum SAR value for this model handset, when tested next to the body as described in this user guide, is 0.856 W/kg.

Placement on the body: Measurements for the 921T were taken with the normal position as the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm. In order to maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the homepage listed below:

Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website:
<http://www.phonefacts.net>

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed limits recommended by international guidelines for exposure to radio waves. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when positioned near the body is 0.531 W/kg*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device during operation is typically below that indicated above. This is because the handset was designed to use the minimum level of transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network. The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a "hands-free" device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional information about SAR can be found at the WHO homepage listed below.
<http://www.who.int/emf>

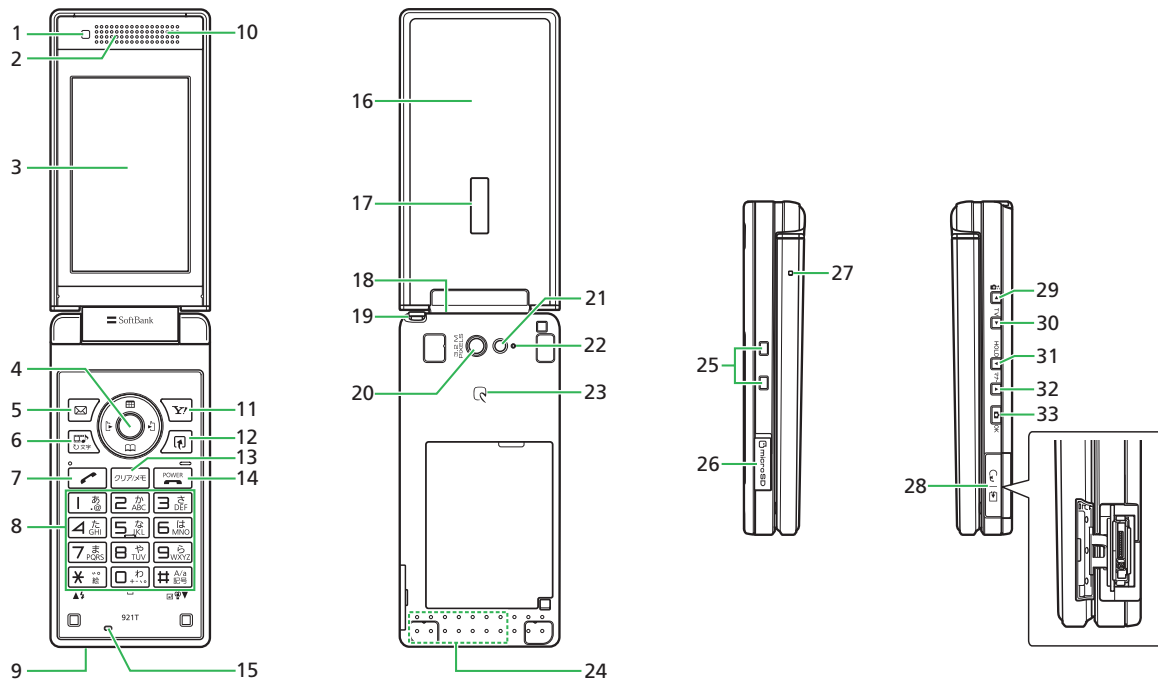
* These tests for wearing the mobile device on the body are carried out in accordance with FCC standards and the values are based on European requirements.






















Handset Parts & Functions	1-2
Display Indicators	1-5
Display	1-5
External Display	1-6
Information Prompt	1-7
Charging the Battery	1-8
Power On/Off	1-11
Date & Time	1-12
Setting Date and Time	1-12
Clock Format (12-hour/24-hour)	1-12
About Mobile Manners	1-13
Manner Mode and Offline Mode	1-13
Codes	1-14
About Codes	1-14

Handset Parts & Functions

1

Getting Started



- 1 **Brightness Sensor**
- 2 **Earpiece**
- 3 **Display**
- 4 **Multi Selector** : Move cursor.
Center Key : Access Main Menu or confirm operations.
- 5 **Mail Key (Left Softkey)** : Access the Messaging Menu.
- 6 **Media Player Key** : Access the Audio Menu or use to make/answer video calls.
- 7 **Send Key** : Make and answer voice calls.
- 8 **Keypad**: Enter phone numbers, characters, etc.
: Turn on/off Mobile Light when using the camera.
 (Press and hold): Set or cancel Manner Mode.
- 9 **Infrared Port**
- 10 **Speaker**
- 11 **Yahoo! Keitai Key (Right Softkey)** : Access Yahoo! Keitai.
- 12 **Shortcut Key** : Access the Shortcuts Menu.
- 13 **Clear/Memo Key** : Delete characters and return to the previous operation.
 (Press and hold): Set or cancel Answering Machine.
- 14 **End/Power Key** : End calls/operations.
 (Press and hold): Power handset on/off.
- 15 **Microphone**
- 16 **External Light**
- 17 **External Display**
- 18 **Handstrap Hole**
- 19 **TV Antenna**
- 20 **Camera**
- 21 **Mobile Light**
- 22 **Camera/Video Indicator**
- 23 **Logo**
- 24 **Internal Antenna**
- 25 **Charger Terminal**
- 26 **Memory Card Slot**
- 27 **Charging Indicator**: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
- 28 **Earphone Microphone Jack/External Device Port**
- 29 **S! Circle Talk Key (Upper Side Key)** : Access S! Circle Talk Members List.
 (Press and hold): Send a Simple Notice of your location, turn the torch (penlight) on, display My Status, or check the balance of e-money for Lifestyle-Appli (it can be set for any one of these functions (page 2-4)).
- 30 **TV Key (Lower Side Key)**  (Press and hold): Watch TV.
- 31 **Hold Key**  (HOLD): Toggle the External Display view (only available while your handset is closed).
 (Press and hold): Set or cancel Hold (only available while your handset is closed).
- 32 **Manner Key** : Toggle the External Display view (only available while your handset is closed).
 (Press and hold): Set or cancel Manner Mode.
- 33 **Camera Key** : Toggle the External Display view* or activate the camera and shutter.
* Only available while your handset is closed.

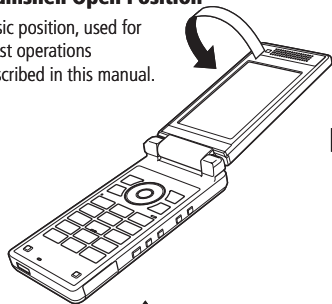
- Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area. Do not cover this area by affixing stickers, or any other items.
- AC Charger and Earphone-Microphone cannot be used simultaneously.

Display Positions

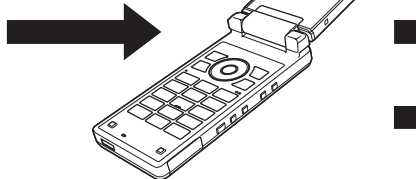
The following Display positions are available.

Clamshell Open Position

Basic position, used for most operations described in this manual.



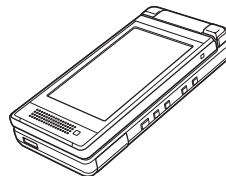
Hold the top portion and rotate the Display as indicated by the arrow.



Close the handset.

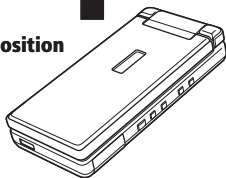
Viewer Position

Convenient for taking pictures, recording videos and watching TV.



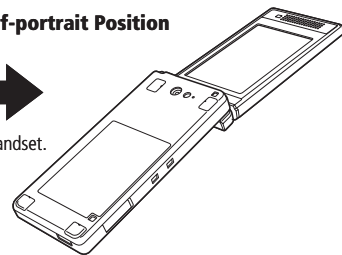
Open the handset.

Closed Position



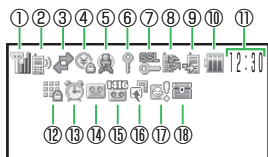
Self-portrait Position

Turn over the handset.



- When rotating the Display, hold the top portion and do not force it in the wrong direction. Doing so may damage the handset.
- Do not carry your handset in Viewer position. Doing so may damage the Display.
- Do not close the handset when the Display is partially rotated. Doing so may damage the Multi Selector, etc.

Display

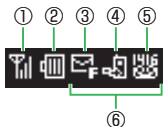


- ① Signal Strength
 - Strong
 - Moderate
 - Weak
 - Faint
- ② Out of Range
 - Out of Range
 - Offline Mode On
- ③ Packet Transmission
 - Voice/Video Call
 - Dial-up Connection
 - Positioning
- ④ IC Card Lock Active
 - Packet Transmission
 - Displaying Picture File with Location Information
 - My Status Online
 - Packet Transmission Ready
 - Packet Network Range
 - 3G Network Unavailable

- ⑤ S! Information Channel Updated
 - Reception of Rights Object
 Indicates the reception of a content key during operation.
 - Message Box Full
 - Message Delivery Failed
 - New Messages
 - Delivery Report
 - New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
- ⑥ Password Lock Active (displays when timer viewing or recording TV.)
 - PC Site Connected
 - S! Quick News Updated
 - Memory Card Inserted
- ⑦ Web SSL
 - Indicates a connection to a web page with security protection.
 - Bluetooth® Connection Established/Connection Standby
 - Bluetooth® Connection Established (SCMS-T Device Supported)
 - Some Bluetooth® Connections Lost
 - Bluetooth® Connection(s) Lost
 - Infrared Communication
 - USB Connection
 - Card Reader Mode
- ⑧ Software Update
 - External Connection for Data Synchronization
 - TV Recording in Progress
 - S! Appli Activated/Paused
 - Playing Music File
 - Music File Playback Paused
 - Playing Video File
 - Streaming
 - TV Timer Set

- ⑨ Missed Call(s)
 - Manner Mode (Silent)
 - Manner Mode (Alarms)
 - Manner Mode (Drive)
 - Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)
- ⑩ Battery Level
 - Battery Level
 - Sufficiently Charged
 - Low
 - Very Low
 - Charge Immediately
- ⑪ Time
 - Charging
- ⑫ Keypad Lock Active
 - Password Lock Active
- ⑬ Alarm Set
 - Answering Machine On (No Messages)
 - Answering Machine On (Message(s) Recorded)
 - Answering Machine Off (Message(s) Recorded)
- ⑮ Missed Call(s) (Message(s) Recorded at Voice Mail Center)
 - Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice Call)
 - Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Video Call)
 - Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice and Video Calls)
- ⑯ Information Prompt Redisplay
 - S! Friend's Status Notification (Invitation)
- ⑰ Show Secret
 -

External Display



- ① Signal Strength
 Strong Moderate Weak Faint
 Out of Range
 Offline Mode On
- ② Battery Level
 Sufficiently Charged
 Low
 Very Low
 Charge Immediately
 Charging
- ③ Message Box Full
 Message Delivery Failed
 New Messages
 Delivery Report
 New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
 Hold Active
 Keypad Lock Active
 Password Lock Active
 IC Card Lock Active
 Cannot Start Music Player
 Bluetooth® Connection Established/
 Connection Standby
 Bluetooth® Connection Established (SCMS-T
 Device Supported)
 Some Bluetooth® Connections Lost
 Bluetooth® Connection(s) Lost

- ④ Missed Call(s)
 Manner Mode (Silent)
 Manner Mode (Alarms)
 Manner Mode (Drive)
 / / Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)
- ⑤ Message(s) Recorded at Voice Mail Center
 Answering Machine On (No Messages)
 / / Answering Machine On
 (Message(s) Recorded)
 / / Answering Machine Off
 (Message(s) Recorded)
- ⑥ Time

Toggle External Display view by pressing **HOLD**,
← or **→** while the handset is closed.

- See page 2-7 for setting External Display view.



Icon & Clock Display



Clock Display



Icon Display



Music Player

Information Prompt

















Information Prompt appears to inform you of missed calls, new messages and other information.

1 Information Prompt appears



2 Select an item →

Information Prompt Items

-  **Missed Calls:** Missed call(s)
-  **Missed Calls:** New Voice Mail message(s) at Voice Mail Center
-  **Ans Machine:** New message(s) recorded
-  **New Messages:** Unread S! Mail/SMS
-  **Unsent Messages:** Unsent S! Mail/SMS
-  **Partly Sent:** Unsent S! Mail for some recipients
-  **Delivered:** Unread delivery report(s)
-  **Missed CT:** Missed S! Circle Talk call(s)
-  **Notification:** New S! Friend's Status notification(s)
-  **Info Channel:** Content update(s) available
-  **Info Channel:** S! Information Channel update failed
-  **Weather Updated:** Weather report update available
-  **Update Failed:** S! Quick News update failed
-  **Stop Snooze:** Cancel snooze
-  **Timer Results:** TV view/record timer results
-  **Resume S! Appli:** S! Appli paused
-  **IC Card Request:** Request from Reader/Writer
-  **Software Update:** Software updated
-  **Content Key Memory Full:** Content key cannot be saved any more



Charging the Battery

1

Getting Started

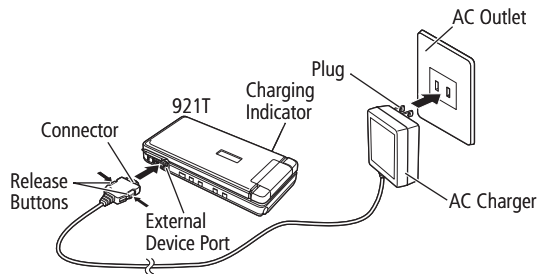
- Charging at low temperatures may be ineffective. Charge battery between 5°C - 35°C.
- Battery must be installed in handset before charging. Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately), Desktop Cradle (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately).
- Regularly clean the charger terminals, battery terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab to avoid contact failure.
- If **Please check connection with your charger** appears on Display, clean charger terminals, battery terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab and try again.

When the message still does not disappear, stop charging immediately, and take the battery to your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

- Do not charge the battery in humid places.
- Charging is possible while your handset is turned on, but takes longer than while your handset is turned off.
- When charging while your handset is turned on,  appears on the display and turns to  when charging is complete.
- The handset and AC Charger may warm during charging. However, if it overheats, stop using immediately. There may be some defect.
- If a call arrives during charging, ringtone sounds/handset vibrates and External Light flashes.

Using AC Charger

Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately).



1 Connect AC Charger connector to handset

- Inscription on connector should face down.

2 Insert the plug into an AC outlet

Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging; may take up to approximately 120 minutes.

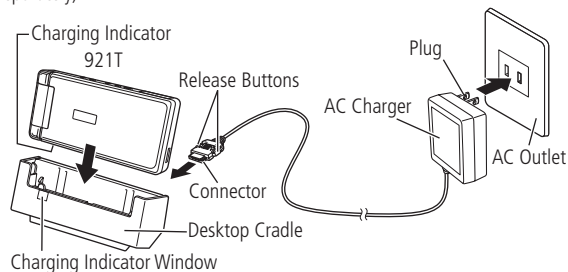
3 Unplug AC Charger, then disconnect handset

- Press and hold Release Buttons to remove AC Charger connector from handset.

- AC Charger and Desktop Cradle support a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Because AC Charger and Earphone-Microphone use the same External Device Port, they cannot be used simultaneously.

Using Desktop Cradle

Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Cradle (sold separately).



1 Attach AC Charger connector to Desktop Cradle

- Inscription on connector should face up.

2 Insert the plug into an AC outlet

3 Slide handset into Desktop Cradle until it clicks

Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging*;
may take up to approximately 120 minutes.

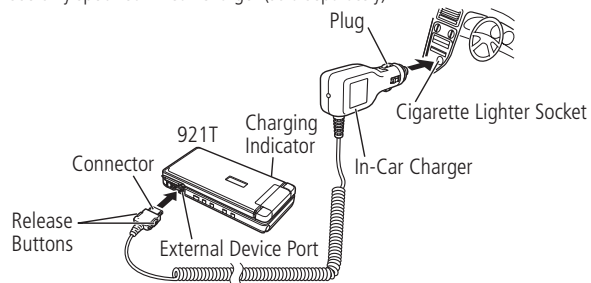
* Charging Indicator glows through Charging Indicator Window.

4 Remove handset from Desktop Cradle, then unplug AC Charger

- In Viewer position, Charging Indicator illuminates but is not visible through Charging Indicator Window.

Using In-Car Charger

Use only specified In-Car Charger (sold separately).



1 Connect Charger connector to handset

- Inscription on connector should face down.

2 Insert Charger into cigarette lighter socket

Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging;
may take up to approximately 120 minutes.

3 Unplug In-Car Charger, then disconnect handset

- Press and hold Release Buttons to remove Charger connector from handset.

- Do not use In-Car Charger when the car engine is off. Doing so may drain the car battery.
- Unplug In-Car Charger when leaving your car. If Charging Indicator remains on after removing car key, In-Car Charger may drain car battery.
- Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.
- Because In-Car Charger and Earphone-Microphone use the same External Device Port, they cannot be used simultaneously.

More Features



Charging In Progress Image (Slideshow) (▶ page 13-7)

Turning Handset Power On

- 1 Press and hold 



Standby

When Handset Powers On for the First Time




Following appears the first time handset is powered on or after performing **Reset All** or **Reset Setting**.



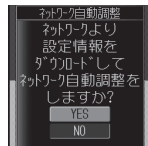
- Set Date & Time (page 1-12).

Retrieving Network Information

Before using network-related services (Yahoo! Keitai, Messaging or S! Appli), retrieve network connection information.






The first time you press ,  or , a prompt appears.

- 1 Press , , or 




- 2 Select **YES** → 

Handset connects to the network and Network Information is retrieved.

- If Network Information is not acquired, some features will be limited.
- After you replace the USIM Card, make sure you retrieve network information.
- To retrieve network information from Main Menu:
Press  → **Settings** →  → **Connectivity**
→  → **Retrieve NW Info** →  → **YES**
→ 

Turning Handset Power Off

- 1 Press and hold 

Power-off screen appears and handset powers off.

Setting Date and Time

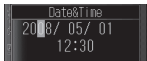
- The date and time are set for the Main City set in the World Clock settings.

- 1 Press → **Settings** → → **Phone Settings** → → **Clock** →



Clock Window

- 2 Select **Date&Time** →



- 3 Enter the year, month, day and time →

- Enter the year, month, day, hour and minute (two digits each). Enter time in the 24-hour system.
- Use to move cursor and to select the numbers.
- The day of the week is set automatically.

Clock Format (12-hour/24-hour)

- 1 From Clock Window, select **12hour/24hour** → → **24hour** →





- 2 Select **12 hour** or **24 hour** →

Manner Mode and Offline Mode



Be careful about disturbing others in public or quiet areas.

- Turn the handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- In airplanes, turn off your handset so that it does not disturb flight safety.
- In such places as hospitals and research institutes, where no use of mobile phones is allowed, turn off your handset so that it does not affect precision apparatuses.
- In such quiet places as restaurants and hotel lobbies, be careful so that your talking voice does not bother others around you.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Using Manner Mode

- 1 Press and hold  or 




- To cancel Manner Mode, press and hold  or  while it is set.

- Shutter click and recording start/end tone sound even in Manner Mode.
- S! Circle Talk connects automatically if My Status is set to **Auto Join**. Other party's voice will sound from speaker when connected, if the handset is closed, even in Manner Mode.

Using Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In Offline Mode, incoming/outgoing calls and network services, such as transmission of S! Mail/SMS are blocked.

- 1 Press  → **Settings** →  → **Call Settings** → 

- 2 Select **Offline Mode** →  (twice) → **ON** → 



- To cancel Offline Mode, select **OFF**.

- The following are unavailable in Offline Mode.
 - Emergency calls: 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)
 - Bluetooth® and infrared communications

More Features

Manner Mode (▶ page 13-11)

- Switch Manner Modes
- Customize Original Mode

About Codes

Your Handset Code, Center Access Code, Call Barring Service Code and Internet Security Code are required for some functions and settings.

- Write down those codes. If they are lost, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).
- Do not reveal your codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code

Handset Code is a four-digit number. It is required to use various handset functions. Your Handset Code can be changed (page 11-2).

- The default setting is "9999".

Center Access Code

Center Access Code is a four-digit number assigned at initial subscription. It is required to perform Optional Service operations via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based content on the Internet.

Call Barring Service Code

Call Barring Service Code is a four-digit number assigned at initial subscription. It is required to set Call Barring. The code can be changed (page 3-18).




If the code is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings lock. If this happens, Call Barring Service Code and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

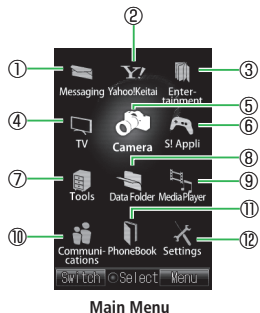
Internet Security Code

Internet Security Code is required to set Internet security. The code can be changed (page 11-5).

Menu Operations	2-2
Accessing Handset Functions	2-2
Wallpaper/Active Window	2-6
Standby	2-6
Text Entry	2-9
About Text Entry	2-9
Entering Characters	2-9
Editing Text	2-12
Word List (Japanese)	2-14
Saving Frequently Used Words	2-14
Phone Book	2-15
Creating New Entries	2-16
Using Phone Book	2-18
Data Folder	2-20
Data Folder Structure	2-20
Opening Files	2-21
Managing Files and Folders	2-21
Memory Card	2-23
Advanced Features	2-25

Accessing Handset Functions

Press  in Standby to open Main Menu.
Use  to select a menu icon and press  to access that menu.



① Messaging

Create S! Mail/SMS messages. Also check received and sent S! Mail/SMS messages (Chapter 4).

② Yahoo! Keitai

From Yahoo! Keitai menu, access the Mobile Internet to download pictures, melodies and applications. Use PC Site Browser to access websites for PCs (Chapter 5).

③ Entertainment

Access latest news, launch BookSurfing® and visit Ku-man's Room (Chapter 9).

④ TV

Watch and record Digital TV broadcasts (Chapter 6).

⑤ Camera

Take pictures and record videos (Chapter 7).

⑥ S! Appli

Access applications such as games (Chapter 8).

⑦ Tools

Access useful functions such as Alarms and Calculator (Chapters 9, 13, 14).

⑧ Data Folder

Save/access files here (Chapter 2).

⑨ Media Player

Play music and video files (Chapter 8).

⑩ Communications

Access Communication Services provided by SoftBank (S! Town, S! Loop, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk) (Chapter 10).

⑪ Phone Book

Save and access Phone Book information (Chapter 2).

⑫ Settings

Modify and confirm handset settings, and perform data communication and backup (Chapters 12, 13).

Switching Main Menu View

Change Main Menu view from Icon View (default) to Tab View.

In Tab View, sub menu items appear when a tab is selected.




1 Press (Switch)



Tab View

- Press  (Switch) in Tab View to return to Icon View.

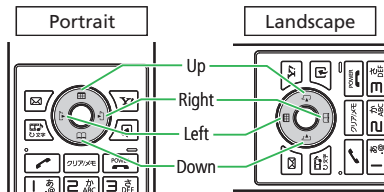
2 Use to select an item

Sub menu list appears below the menu title. Press  or  and use  to select an item.

Operations in Landscape View

Differences between cursor movement with Multi Selector in Portrait View and in Landscape View are shown below.

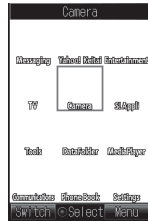
- This cursor movement does not apply to Landscape View of Digital TV.



Customizing Main Menu

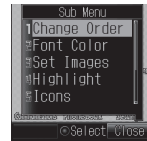
Customize Main Menu design (icons, font color, focus frame color, etc.).

- Press $\odot \rightarrow \text{Y}$ \rightarrow **Set Images** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Options** $\rightarrow \odot$



- Original** - Default theme.
- Phone Memory** - Select a theme from handset Data Folder.
- Keitaideco** - Sets the downloaded Keitaideco as Main Menu.

- Select an item $\rightarrow \text{Y}$



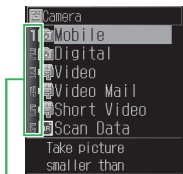
- Select **Icons** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Pictures** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Select an image** $\rightarrow \odot$

- To change the icon order:
Press Y \rightarrow **Change Order** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Select an item** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Select a position** $\rightarrow \odot$
- To change the font color:
Press Y \rightarrow **Font Color** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Select a color** $\rightarrow \odot$
- To change the wallpaper:
Press Y \rightarrow **Wallpaper** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Pictures** or **Digital Camera** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Select a wallpaper** $\rightarrow \odot$
- To change the focus frame:
Press Y \rightarrow **Highlight** $\rightarrow \odot \rightarrow$ **Select a color** $\rightarrow \odot$

2

Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Enter the menu item number on handset keypad (0-9) to **Settings**, **Phone**, **Navigation Keys**, or **Side Key** for direct access to that menu item.

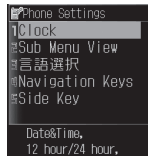


Numbers correspond to the keypad.

Changing Multi Selector Shortcuts

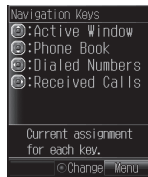
By default, a shortcut is assigned to each Multi Selector key. Switch the assigned shortcuts.

- 1 Press **Settings** → **Phone**
Settings →



Phone Settings Window

- 2 Select **Navigation Keys** →



- 3 Press → Select the function you want to assign to → Select the function you want to assign to → Select the function you want to assign to →
 - The remaining function is assigned automatically to.

Setting Upper Side Key Function

Set a function to Upper Side Key. Choose from SimpleNotice, Torch, My Status or Balance. Press and hold in Standby to access the set function.

- 1 From Phone Settings Window, select **Side Key** → Select the function to set →

Sub Menu View

Sub Menu View appears at top of sub menus (press (Menu) for sub menu access). When multiple sub menu items are available, the two most recently selected items appear in Sub Menu View.

- 1 From Phone Settings Window, select **Sub Menu View** →
- 2 Select **Show or Hide** →

- This setting is disabled for S! Circle Talk, S! Circle Talk Call Log and S! Friend's Status.

Adding Functions to Shortcuts Menu

Add frequently used functions to Shortcuts Menu for quick and easy access.

1 Open a function → 



2 Press  (Assign)

Using Shortcuts Menu

1 Press  → Select a function → 

- Up to two functions can be called up from Shortcuts Menu.

More Features



Menus (▶ page 2-25)



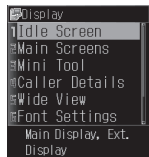
Mini Tool Settings (▶ page 13-3)

- Configure Mini Tool Settings
- Set Wide View
- Set an Animation for Mini Tool

Standby

Wallpaper

- 1 Press **OK** → **Settings** → **Display** → **OK**



Display Setting Window

- 2 Select **Idle Screen** → **Main Display** → **Wallpaper** → **Picture** → **OK**



- 3 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → **OK** → Select a folder → **OK** → Select an image → **OK**

- 4 Use **OK** to compose the image
 - To adjust the width or height:
Press **OK** (Resize) → **Fit to Width** or **Fit to Length** → **OK**
 - To rotate the image:
Press **OK** (Resize) → **Rotate Image** → **OK**

- 5 Press **YV** (Cut) → **OK**

- 6 Select **OK** → **OK**
 - Flash® or Animation wallpaper is disabled when Active Window is on. Select **Notify Only Once** to prevent warning message from appearing again.

- To set the default image:
In **3**, select **Preset** → **OK** (twice)
- To set Keitaideco:
In **3**, select **Keitaideco*** → **OK** (twice)
* Keitaideco must be set in advance (page 2-30).

Animation

A series of images appear as an animation in Standby. Set animation effect and image order.

- 1 From Display Setting Window, select **Idle Screen** → **Main Display** → **Wallpaper** → **Animation** → **OK**









- 2 Select **Image** → **Images List** → **OK** → Select a list → **OK**
 - Save images to Images List first:
Press **OK** (Edit) → Select an entry → **OK** → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → **OK** → **Pictures** → **OK** → Select an image → **OK** (twice) → **OK** (Set)
- 3 Select **Design** → **OK** → Select an animation effect → **OK** (twice)
- 4 Select **Order** → **OK** → Select an image order → **OK**

5 Press (Set) → OK →

- Flash® or Animation wallpaper is disabled when Active Window is on. Select **Notify Only Once** to prevent warning message from appearing again.




- To set images in a folder:
In **2**, select **Select Folder** →  → Select a folder → 
- To set preinstalled images:
In **2**, select **Preset** → 

Clock

- From Display Setting Window, select **Idle Screen** →  → **Main Display** → 
→ **Others** →  → **Select a clock type** →
 (twice)
 - When you select **1-line Digit**, **2-line Digit**, **World-Digital**, or **World-Analog**, do the following.
Use  to adjust the position →  (twice)

External Display


Set Indicators off or on for External Display.

- From Display Setting Window, select **Idle Screen** →  → **Ext. Display** → 
Icon+Clock or **Clock Only** → 

Active Window (Japanese)

Save contact information to Members List and make calls, send messages and initiate S! Circle Talk from Active Window. In addition, check the latest information from S! Quick News and Weather Indicator.

Enabling Active Window Operations

- Press 

You can perform Active Window operations when the cursor is displayed.



- Press  (Switch) to toggle between Shortcut and Communication Modes.

① S! Quick News

Displays newly received information and images.

② Weather Indicator

③ Members List

Your current status (My Status) is displayed on the top. Set an icon or a photo for each member.
Save members from S! Friend's Status Members List to view their status. Make calls, send messages or initiate S! Circle Talk in Communication Mode.

Saving People to Members List

Add members to Members List from S! Friend's Status Members List or Phone Book. View member's status from Active Window.

1 From Active Window (Communication Mode), select an empty item → ● (Save)

- To change members:
Select an entry → → *Change Member* → ● → *YES* → ●

2 Select *Friend Status* or *Phone Book* →

- → Select an entry → ●

Contacting Members

1 From Active Window (Communication Mode), use to select a member

2 Use to select a contact method



- To make a call
- To create and send a message
- To make an S! Circle Talk call

Checking S! Quick News Updates

- You must register contents of S! Quick News in advance (page 9-22).

1 From Active Window (Shortcut Mode), use to select S! Quick News → ●

- Press (Update) to update information.
- Press (Access) to access selected site.

- If update fails, Information Prompt appears. In List Window, press then select *Update* to initiate update.

Checking Weather Forecast

- For details on using the Weather Indicator, see page 9-23.

1 From Active Window (Shortcut Mode), use to select Weather Indicator icons → ●

More Features



Active Window

(▶ page 2-25)



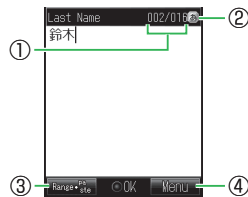
Active Window Settings (▶ page 13-8)

- Select S! Quick News Information to Display
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Image Display
- Restore Settings and Registered Contents of S! Quick News to Default

About Text Entry

There are four kinds of input methods: Standard mode, Beeper mode, T9 mode and Multi-tap mode. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described using Standard mode. For details on entering text in Beeper mode, see page 14-10.

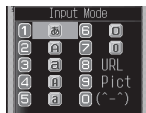
About Text Entry Window



- ① Number of characters entered/Maximum number of characters allowed is displayed. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the function.
- ② Indicates the current input mode.
- ③ Selects the range of text.
By pressing when a text range is selected, you can perform operations such as copying or saving the selected text to the Word List.
- ④ By pressing you can perform operations such as editing text and arranging message text.

Switching Text Input Modes

- 1 In a text entry window, press
 - Unavailable text input modes are not displayed.



- 2 Select a text input mode .
The text input mode is switched.

Text Input Mode Icons

- Kanji (hiragana)
- Single-byte katakana
- Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- Double-byte numbers
- Single-byte numbers
- URL: Enter e-mail address and URL extensions from the address library.
- Pict: Enter pictographs.
- (^~): Enter emoticons.
- My Pict: Enter pictographs in My Pictograms folder.

Entering Characters

- For text entry key assignments, see page 14-9.
Example: Entering 鈴木

- 1 In a text entry window, enter すす




- Press (three times) (three times) (twice)




- 2 Press



- To exit the suggestion list and enter characters after すす, press .

3 Use  **to select**  

 is determined.

- To finish text entry, press  after determining entered text.

Lower Case (a, ɔ, etc.)

In all the input modes except Numeric, you can change the case of a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).


Example: Changing  to lower case

1 In a text entry window, press **2 Press**  

 is determined.



Adding ` or °

In Kanji (hiragana) input mode and Single-byte katakana input mode, you can add "`" (dakuten) and "°" (handakuten) to a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Entering 

1 In a text entry window, press **2 Press**  

 is determined.






- With characters like  to which both "`" (dakuten) and "°" (handakuten) can be added, you can switch between "`" and "°" by pressing .

Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion

Enter alphanumerics and katakana in Kanji (hiragana) input mode.



Example: Entering TOM (single-byte) in Kanji (hiragana) input mode



1 In a text entry window, press the key to which the character is assigned

- Press  (once)  (three times)   (once)
 is entered.

2 Press 


A suggestion list of roman characters and katakana appears.

- Press  (Kana) /  (Num.) to switch between roman character/katakana conversion and number conversion.




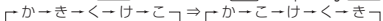
3 Press   **to select** TOM (single-byte) 


TOM (single-byte) is determined.

Displaying Characters in Reverse Order


In all the input modes except Numeric, you can display unconverted characters on the cursor in the reverse order from the one on the Key assignments chart by pressing .

Example: Entering the characters assigned to 


Press  Press  after pressing 


Symbols**1 In a text entry window, press** 

The double-byte symbol list window appears.

**2 Select a symbol** 

The selected symbol is entered and the symbol list window disappears.

- To enter symbols continuously from the symbol list window, press  after selecting each symbol.

Alphanumeric

1 In a text entry window, press $\boxed{\#} \boxed{06}$ (twice)

The double-byte alphanumeric list window appears.

- The number of times $\boxed{\#} \boxed{06}$ is pressed differs depending on the function.



2 Select a number or letter $\rightarrow \bullet$

- Repeat this step to enter another number or letter.

Pictographs

1 In a text entry window, press $\boxed{*} \boxed{66}$

The pictograph list window appears.

- You may be unable to enter pictographs depending on the function.



2 Select a pictograph $\rightarrow \bullet$

The selected pictograph is entered and the pictograph list window disappears.

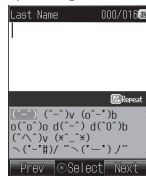
- To enter pictographs continuously from the pictograph list window, press $\boxed{\#} \boxed{66}$ after selecting each pictograph.

Emoticons

1 In a text entry window, press $\boxed{*} \boxed{66}$ (twice)

The emoticon list window appears.

- The number of times $\boxed{*} \boxed{66}$ is pressed differs depending on the function.



2 Select an emoticon $\rightarrow \bullet$

The selected emoticon is entered and the emoticon list window disappears.

- To enter emoticons continuously from the emoticon list window, press $\boxed{\#} \boxed{66}$ after selecting each emoticon.

E-mail Address and URL Extensions

Example: Entering *.co.jp* (part of an e-mail address)

- 1 In a text entry window, press →

URL →

The address library is displayed.



- 2 Select *.co.jp* →

Editing Text

Correcting Entered Text

- 1 In a text entry window, move cursor to the left of the character to delete →

The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

 - To delete all the characters to the right of the cursor, press and hold .
 - When the cursor is at the end of text, press and hold to delete all the characters.

- 2 Enter correct characters

Deleting Multiple Characters

- 1 In a text entry window, move cursor to the first character of the text range to delete → (Range·paste)

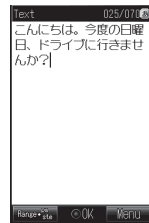


- 2 Select *Start* → → Move cursor to the last character →
- 3 Select *Delete* →

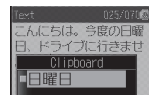
Copy/Cut/Paste

- 1 In a text entry window, move cursor to the first character of the text range to copy/cut → (Range·paste)
- 2 Select *Start* → → Move cursor to the last character →
- 3 Select *Cut or Copy* →

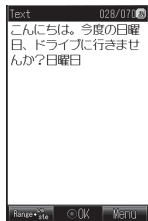
The selected range of text is stored on the clipboard.
- 4 Position the cursor



- 5 Press (Range·paste) → *Paste* →



6 Select the text to paste → ●



Undoing Last Operation

1 In a text entry window, press →

Undo → ●



- Once text is reconverted or replaced, undo is unavailable.

More Features



Text Entry (▶ page 2-26)

Text Entry Functions (▶ page 2-27)



Text Entry Settings (▶ page 13-34)

- Change the Input Method
- Do Not Predict Words from Previously Entered Text Strings
- Do Not Predict Next Phrase from Previously Entered Phrases
- Set the Custom Window
- Set the Text Deletion Method
- Reset the Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary

Word List (Japanese)

2

Saving Frequently Used Words

- 1 In a text entry window, press →
Customize → ● → *Word List* → ●



- 2 Select *To Word List* → ● → *Word* → ●
→ Enter a word → ●



- 3 Select *Reading* → ● → Enter a reading
→ ●



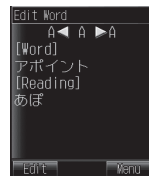
- 4 Press (OK)

Save Words During Text Entry

- 1 During text entry, move cursor to the first character of target word → (Range·paste)
- 2 Select *Start* → ● → Move cursor to the last character → ●
- 3 Select *To Word List* → ●
- 4 Select *Reading* → ● → Enter the reading → ●
- 5 Press (OK)

Edit Saved Entries

- 1 In a text entry window, press →
Customize → ● → *Word List* → ● →
Edit Word → ●



- 2 Select a word → (Edit) → Select the word/reading → ● → Edit the word/reading → ●
- 3 Press (OK)

More Features



Word List Functions (▶ page 2-28)

Phone Book

Save phone numbers, e-mail address and other contact information to Phone Book.

Phone Book Entry Items

Basic Information

Name and Reading	Picture
Entry Number	Group
Phone Number	Note
E-mail Address	

Options

External Light
Ringtone Volume
Ringtone
Vibration
Ring Time
Message Folder
Secret
External Display

Personal Info

Address
Job Title
Company
Birthday
URL
Location Information

Access Phone Book information while making calls, writing messages, creating S! Circle Talk groups.

Some Features

Speed Dial

Make calls to people in Phone Book quickly.

Messaging

Specify addresses from Phone Book quickly when writing messages.

S! Addressbook Back-up

Back up Phone Book to server. Sync updates to back up new information.

Reject Calls

Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book.



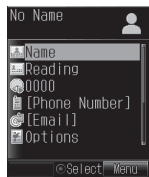
• Back Up Important Information

When the battery is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

Creating New Entries

Example: Saving a name, phone number and e-mail address, and specifying a group.

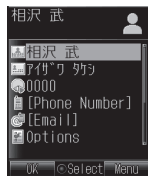
- 1 Press **OK** → **Phone Book** → **OK** → **New Entry** → **OK**



Phone Book Entry Window

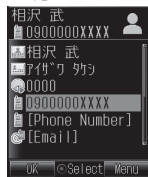
- 2 Select **Name** → **OK** → **Last Name or First Name** → **OK** → Enter a last name/first name → **OK** (OK)

- Characters entered for name (reading for kanji) appear.
- To correct the reading, select a reading field (last name or first name) and edit the information.
- When you save to USIM Phone Book, enter both the first name and last name in the **Name** field.



- 3 Select **Phone Number** → **OK** → Enter a phone number → **OK** → Select a category → **OK**

- To enter a hyphen "-" or a pause "P" (page 3-14), press **Shift** and then select **Manual Hyphen** or **Pause (P)**.



- 4 Select **Email** → **OK** → Enter an e-mail address → **OK** → Select a category → **OK**



- 5 Select **No Group** → **OK** → Select a group → **OK**



- 6 Press **OK** (OK)

Setting a Picture

- 1 From Phone Book Entry Window, select **Picture** →
- 2 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** →
 - To capture an image:
Select **Take Picture** → Take a picture →
For details on taking pictures, see page 7-3.
- 3 Select **Pictures** or **Digital Camera** →
 - Select a picture → (twice)



- If Details of a picture file (page 2-30) indicate that the file is **Unavailable** for forwarding, the picture file cannot be set as Picture.

Setting Personal Ringtones

- 1 From Phone Book Entry Window, select **Options** →
- 2 Select a type of incoming event →
Ringtone →
 - To set a ringtone preinstalled in the handset:
Select **Patterns** or **Melodies** →
Select a ringtone pattern →
 - If you select **Same as Phone**, the ringtone will be the same as the corresponding setting of Sounds.
- 3 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** →



- To set a ringtone preinstalled in the handset:
Select **Patterns** or **Melodies** →
Select a ringtone pattern →
 - If you select **Same as Phone**, the ringtone will be the same as the corresponding setting of Sounds.
- 4 Select a folder → → Select a ringtone pattern → (twice)

Secret Entries



Set specific Phone Book entries as Secret so other people cannot see them.



- 1 From Phone Book Entry Window, select **Options** →
- 2 Select **Secret** → → **ON** →






- indicates a Secret entry.
- To view Secret entries, switch Secret Mode (page 11-4) to **Show**.

Saving Numbers from Call Log

1 Press  / 

- To switch between Dialled and Received, press  / .



2 Select a phone number    ToPhone Book   Add New 

- To add the phone number to an existing Phone Book entry, select **Add** and select the entry.



Using Phone Book

Calling from Phone Book



1 Press 

- Press  or  to access the previous or next index tab.

2 Select an entry 

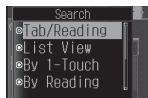
- Press  or  to scroll entries within the same index tab.

3 Select a phone number 

- In Standby, press and hold a number key ( to ) to access the corresponding index tab. Alternatively, enter the first character(s) of the name in the search window.

Changing Search Mode

1 Press → → **Search Mode** →



2 Select a search mode →

- Select from the following search modes.

Tab/Reading (default):

Enter reading (or partial reading) to search entries or select tab to scroll through entries.

List View:

Select tab then scroll through entries.

By 1-Touch*:

Search entries by the first letter of names. Press corresponding number key (1 to 9).

By Reading:

Enter reading (or partial reading) to search entries.

By Memory No.:

Search by entry number (Memory Number). Enter target entry number.

By Phone No.:

Search by entering a phone number.

Group Filter:

Search entries by Group.

* 2タッチ検索 (By 2-Touch), if 言語選択 (Language) is set to 日本語 (Japanese). In By 2-Touch search, select the first character of a reading (Press any of to , , and key"/> → Press any of to key"/>.

More Features



Phone Book Entry Functions

(page 2-28)

Customizing by Entry

(page 2-28)

Managing Phone Book

(page 2-29)



Phone Book Settings (page 13-35)

- Change the Default Storage Location
- Prohibit Use of Phone Book

Settings for Phone Book Groups

(page 13-35)

- Edit a Group Name/Group Icon

Data Folder Structure

2

Basic Operations

Use Data Folder to save and manage files on handset. Files are saved to folders by file format.

Folders

Pictures

Picture files including those taken with the camera/My Pictograms folder

Digital Camera*¹

Pictures taken in Digital mode

Ring Song•Tone

Sound files such as melodies, sounds recorded with Voice Recorder

S! Appli

Downloaded S! Appli

Music

Downloaded music files, Chaku-Uta Full®

Videos

Video files including those recorded with the camera

TV

Recorded TV program files

Lifestyle-Appli*²

Lifestyle-Appli for using Osaifu-Keitai®

Books

Electronic comic books, photo albums, etc.

Templates

Mail templates

Flash(R)

Flash® image files/Flash(R) Tones folder

Main Menu*²

Image files for Main Menu

Gamendeco

Icon/image files for screen decoration

Keitaideco

Keitaideco files



Mini Tool*²

Mini Tool image files/Mini Photo folder

Other Documents

Files other than those listed above, such as vObjects, document files, etc.



- Files saved to the handset may be altered or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
-  indicates files requiring content usage rights. Press  and select **Buy Key** to obtain a content key.

*1 Shown only in the memory card Data Folder.

*2 Shown only in the handset Data Folder.

Opening Files

- 1 Press → **Data Folder** →



Data Folder Window

- 2 Select a folder →



- 3 Select a file →

Using Download Links

Some folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai. Use links to access Yahoo! Keitai and download content.

Slideshow

- 1 Open Data Folder → **Pictures** →
- 2 Select a file → → **Change View** →
- 3 Select **Slideshow** →
 - To end slideshow, press or .



Managing Files and Folders

Creating a Folder

Folders can be created in the *Pictures, Ring Song • Tone, Music, Videos, TV, Books, Flash(R), Main Menu, Gamendeco, Mini Tool* and *Other Documents* folders.



- 1 Open Data Folder → Select a folder →
- 2 Press → **Create Folder** →



- 3 Enter a folder name →

- Folders cannot be created within the **TV** folder on a memory card.

Moving Files

- 1 Open Data Folder → Select a folder → ●
- 2 Select a file →  → Move → ●
- 3 Select *One* → ●
 - To move multiple files:
Select *Select Multi* → ● → Select files → ● →  (Move)
 - To move all files:
Select *All* → ● → Enter your Handset Code



- 4 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → ●
- 5 Select the destination folder → ●
 - To move files to a new folder:
Press  (Create) → Enter a folder name → ●

- When you move a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a music file in MPEG-4 format (.3GP, .MP4 and .M4A) to another folder, select the fixed folder first and then select the destination folder.

Setting Folder Security

Set Security Lock ON to require Handset Code entry when accessing files in the folder.

- 1 Open Data Folder → Select a folder you created →  → Security Lock → ●
- 2 Enter your Handset Code → ON → ●

More Features



- Checking Files (▶ page 2-30)
- Using Files (▶ page 2-30)
- Managing Files/Folders (▶ page 2-31)

Memory Card

Save files to a memory card.

- This manual refers to a microSD memory card as "memory card".
- Handset may not read/write files when battery level is low.
- Never remove memory card or battery while accessing/formatting files. Doing so may damage memory card resulting in lost files.
- Files on memory cards may be altered or lost from improper use, accidents or mechanical failure. Back up important files.
- Do not put labels or stickers on memory cards.
- For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function.
- Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of January 2008). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.
- Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.

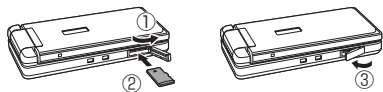
Memory Card Structure and File Storage Locations

Folder Name	File Type
DCIM	Pictures taken in Digital mode
PRIVATE	
MYFOLDER	
Mail	Message backup files
My Items	Folders in Data Folder (Pictures, My Pictograms, Videos, Ring Song · Tone, Music, Templates, Flash(R), Flash(R) Tones, Books, S! Appli, Other Documents), bookmark backup files
TS_Folder	Handset settings (backed up by Relocate function), Gamendeco/Keitaideco files, Media Player files, Ku-man's Room files
Utility	
Calendar	Event backup files
Contacts	Phone Book data and backup files
Memo	Notepad backup files
Rights	Content key backup files
Tasks	Tasks backup files
SD_VIDEO*	Recorded TV program files

* Do not alter data on your PC. Files may become unreadable on your handset.

Inserting Memory Card

Insert a memory card after turning off the handset. Otherwise, files on the memory card may be lost.



- 1 Open the memory card slot cover (1)
- 2 Insert memory card until it locks into position (gold terminal should face down) (2)
- 3 Close the memory card slot cover (3)

Removing Memory Card

Turn handset off and open the memory card slot. Gently push to eject card. Slide card out gently.

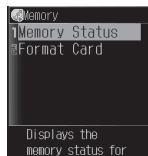
- The memory card may pop out abruptly when removing it from your handset. Be cautious when ejecting the memory card.

Formatting a Memory Card

Formatting memory card deletes all data on the memory card.

- If a memory card is formatted on another device, it may not work properly with your handset.

- 1 Press **Settings** → **Memory** → **Format Card**



- 2 Select **Format Card** → Enter your **Handset Code** → **YES**

Opening Memory Card Data

- 1 Press **Data Folder** → **Pictures**



- 2 Select a folder → **Pictures**



- 3 Select a file → **My Pictograms**

More Features



Checking Files

(▶ page 2-30)



Display

Menus

From → **Main Menu** page 2-2
Phone Settings Window page 2-4

Reset Main Menu (Icons/Wallpaper)

Main Menu → **Reset Options** → **YES**
→

Reset Multi Selector Assignment

Phone Settings Window → **Navigation Keys** →
→ **Reset** → **YES** →

Rename Shortcut Titles

→ **Select a function** → **Edit Title** →
→ Enter a title →
• You cannot edit the titles of preset Shortcut functions.

Customize Shortcuts Menu Icons

→ **Select a function** →

■ Setting an Icon Preinstalled in the Handset

Change Icon → **Preset Icons** →
Select an icon →

■ Setting an Image Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card

Change Icon → **Phone Memory** or
Memory Card → **Pictures** → Select
an image → to compose the image →

→

• You cannot change the icons of preset Shortcut functions.

■ Moving Icons

Arrange Icons → Select a destination →
→

Delete Shortcut Icons

→ **Select a function** →

■ Deleting One Entry

Delete → **YES** →

■ Deleting All Entries

Delete All → Enter your Handset Code →
YES →
• You cannot delete preset Shortcut functions.

Active Window

From → **Shortcut Mode** page 2-7
Communication Mode page 2-7








Set Active Window to Manual Open

→ **Settings** → **Display** → **Idle Screen** → **Main Display** → **Active Window** → **ON (Manual)** →
• Press in Standby to open Active Window.

View Members in Shortcut Mode

Shortcut Mode → **Settings** → **Templates** →
→ **Member/News** or **Member** →

Edit Members List

Communication Mode  → **Edit List** →  →
 Select a member →  → **YES** →  → **Friend Status** or **Phone Book** →  → Select an entry → 
 • To add a new member, select **Edit List**, then **Not Registered**, and press .


Change Members List Icons

Communication Mode Select a member →  →
Change Icon →  → **Phone Book** or **Icon** →
 → Select an icon → 

Toggle My Status Display On/Off



Communication Mode  → **Edit List** →  → **My Status ON** or **My Status OFF** →  (ON/OFF)

Check Member Status


Communication Mode  to select a member →
 → **View** → 

Text Entry






Insert a Line Break

In a text entry window, enter text and convert →  to insert a line break
 • When the input method is Standard or Beeper, you can also enter a line break by pressing and holding 
 • To insert a line break to the left of the text that has been determined, access line break from the symbol list window (page 2-10).
 • Line break is unavailable in some text entry windows.










Insert a Space

In a text entry window, 
 • To insert a space to the left of the text that has been determined, select a space from the symbol list window (page 2-10).

Use Single Kanji Conversion

Example: Entering  (すずき)
 In a text entry window, enter  (twice) → Select  from the suggestion list → 
 • When  (Single Kanji Conversion List) is not displayed in a text entry window, the entered characters cannot be converted with Single Kanji conversion.

Convert a Name One Character at a Time

Example: Entering  (あかり)
 In a text entry window, enter  →  to select  (Name Conversion) →  → Select  →  → Select  →  (twice)






Conversion Prediction/Phrase Prediction

The handset is equipped with MobileRUPO™, Toshiba's kana-kanji conversion engine.

Mobile
Rupo
 A I 変換対応

* MobileRUPO™ is a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

Using Conversion Prediction

Example: Entering  (あかり)
 In a text entry window,  (five times) →  (five times) →  →  to select  → 

■Using Phase Prediction

Example: Entering the same phrase *おはよう* that you have entered before

In a text entry window, enter *は* → → to select *お* → → to select *は* → → to select *よう* → → to select *おはよう*

Save Original Emoticons

In a text entry window, → (^_^) → → **User Created** → → Select an empty item → → Create an emoticon → (twice)

Text Entry Functions

Font Size

In a text entry window, → **Customize** → → **Font Size** → → Select a font size →

Insert Phone Book Information

In a text entry window, → **Insert** →

■Inserting Phone Book Information

Phone Book → → Select a Phone Book entry → → Select an item →

■Inserting Other Information

My Details, Phrases, Emoticon, Signature, Notepad, Message Box or **URL History** →

Save Text to Notepad

Scroll to beginning of text range → → **Start** → → Move cursor to end of text → → **To Notepad** → → Select an entry →

- Used entries will be overwritten.

Save Numbers/E-mail Addresses to Phone Book

Scroll to beginning of text range → → **Start** → → Move cursor to end of text → → **To Phone Book** → → **Add New** or **Add** →

- See "Creating New Entries" (page 2-16) for entering other items.
- If selected item contains characters or symbols not savable to Phone Book, the entry is not saved.

Reconvert Determined Text

Scroll to beginning of text range → → **Start** → → Move cursor to end of text → → **Convert** →

■Converting Hiragana to Kanji

Kana/Kanji → → Select a word from the suggestion list →

■Converting All into Full/Half Width

Full Width or **Half Width** →

■Converting All Roman Characters into Upper/Lower Case

Upper Case or **Lower Case** →

Replace Text with Clipboard Entry

Scroll to beginning of text range → → **Start** → → Move cursor to end of text → → **Replace** → → Select text from clipboard →

Word List Functions

Delete All Entries

In a text entry window,  *Customize* → 
 → *Word List* →  → *Delete All* →  → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* → 

Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Functions






From →  *Phone Book Entry Window* page 2-16

Save Other Information

■ Address/Job Title/Company

 *Personal Info.* → 
 Select an item →  → Enter an item →  → 

■ Birthday

 *Personal Info.* → 
Birthday →  → Enter a birthday →  → 
 • Enter four digits for the year and if the month or date is a single digit, prefix it with a 0.

■ URL

 *Personal Info.* → 
URL →  → Enter a URL →  → Select a type
 →  → 

■ Note

 *Note* →  → Enter a reminder → 


■ Memory Number (Entry Number)

 Select the current entry number →  → Enter a new entry number → 

Set Location Information

 *Personal Info.* → 
No Location → 

■ Setting Your Current Position

Position →  → Perform positioning → 







■ Setting from Location Logs/My Locations

Location Logs or *My Locations* →  →
 Select location information →  → 

■ Setting from Picture File







My Pictures →  → Select a file →  → 

Check Number of Entries

-  → *Phone Book* →  → *Memory Status* → 
- Press  (Count) /  (Rate) to switch between the number of entries and the usage rate.
- When Secret Mode is set to *Hide*, the number of entries other than Secret entries is displayed.

Customizing by Entry

Ringtone Volume

 *Options* →  → *Voice Call, Video Call, Message, Circle Talk* or *Notification* →  → *Ringtone Vol.* →  → *Options* or *Same as Phone* →  → Adjust the volume → 

- In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual ringtone volume is fixed at level 3 even if it is set higher than level 3; and the maximum volume is level 3 if the ringtone volume is set to *Ascending Volume* or *Descending Volume*.

External Light/Vibration

Phone Book Entry Window **Options** → ● → **Voice Call, Video Call, Message, Circle Talk** or **Notification** → ●

External Light

ExternalLight → ● → Select a color, **OFF** or **Same as Phone** → ●

Vibration

Vibration → ● → Select a pattern, **OFF** or **Same as Phone** → ●

Ring Time for New Message/Notification Ringtone

Phone Book Entry Window **Options** → ● → **Message** or **Notification** → ● → **Duration** → ● → **Set Duration, 1 Cycle** or **Same as Phone** → ● → Enter a ring time → ●

Filter Messages

Phone Book Entry Window **Options** → ● → **Message** → ● → **MessageFolder** → ● → Select a folder or **None** → ●

Display Caller/Sender Name (External Display)

Phone Book Entry Window **Options** → ● → **Ext. Display** → ● → **ON, OFF** or **Same as Phone** → ●

Customize Incoming Event Alerts by Group




● → **Phone Book** → ● → **Group** → ● → Select a group → ● → **Options** → ●

- See "Setting Personal Ringtones" (page 2-17) for operations.

Managing Phone Book

Switch Phone Book (USIM/Handset/Memory Card)

● → **☰** → **Change View** → ● → Select a storage location → ●

- The handset Phone Book , USIM Phone Book , and memory card Phone Book  are displayed.

Sort Entries

● → **☰** → **Sort by** → ● → **Alphabet** or **Birthday** → ●

- Available when Search Mode (page 2-19) is set to **List View, By 1-Touch** or **1タッチ検索** (By 2-Touch).

Edit Entries

● → Select a Phone Book entry → ● → Select an item → ● → Edit the item → ● → **☒** → **Save** or **Save as New** → ●

Copy/Move Entries

Copying/Moving One Entry

● → Select a Phone Book entry → **☰** → **Copy** or **Move** → ● → **One** → ● → **Phone Memory, USIM** or **Memory Card** → ●

Copying/Moving Multiple Entries

● → **☰** → **Copy** or **Move** → ● → **Select Multi** → ● → Select Phone Book entries → ● → **☒** (Copy)/**☒** (Move) → **Phone Memory, USIM** or **Memory Card** → ●

Copying/Moving All Entries

● → **☰** → **Copy** or **Move** → ● → **All** → ● → **Phone Memory, USIM** or **Memory Card** → ●

- The items you can save to Phone Book differ depending on the handset, USIM or memory card Phone Book.

Delete Entries

■ Deleting One Entry

☺ → Select a Phone Book entry → → Delete → ● → One → ● → YES → ●

■ Deleting Multiple Entries

☺ → → Delete → ● → Select Multi → ● → Select Phone Book entries → ● → → YES → ●

■ Deleting All Entries

☺ → → Delete → ● → All → ● → Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

Data Management

From → page 2-21

Checking Files

Change Data Folder View

Pictures, My Pictograms, Digital Camera, Videos, TV, Books, Main Menu, Mini Tool or Mini Photo → ● → → Change View → ● → View Type → ● → Select the view type → ●

File Properties

Select a folder → ● → Select a file → → Details → ●

Check Available Memory (Data Folder/ Memory Card)

Memory Status → ●
● Press to toggle between the handset and memory card status.

Using Files

Picture Files

Access Data Folder from each function* → *Pictures* → ● → Select a file → ● → to compose the image → → ●

* See the following: Wallpaper settings (page 2-6), incoming call/message image settings (page 13-2), video call settings (page 13-23), Phone Book picture settings (page 2-17).

- For adjusting the picture size, see page 7-9.
- If a GIF animation is selected, only the first image (still image) is displayed.

Melody/Music/Video and Flash® Files

Access Data Folder from each function* → *Ring Song•Tone, Music, Videos, Flash(R)* or *Flash(R) Tones* → ● → Select a file → ● (twice)

* See the following: Main Menu image settings (page 2-3), sound settings (page 13-11), Wallpaper settings (page 2-6), Event/Task/Reminder alarm tone settings (page 9-28), alarm tone settings (page 9-33), setting a different ringtone for each Phone Book entry (page 2-17).

Customize User Interface (Keitaideco)

Keitaideco → ● → Select a file → ● → YES → ●

- Wide View is switched to *ON* in Standby.





vObjects

- By converting data such as Phone Book entries, Calendar events and Task data into vObject file format, you can exchange those data with other vObject compatible SoftBank handsets and PCs.
- vObject compatible software is required to use vObjects on a PC or other device.
- When a vObject includes many characters, some of the data may not be able to be sent or received.
- Depending on the software used, vObjects may not be displayed properly.


■ Creating a vObject

Display Phone Book (page 2-15)/Calendar (page 9-4)/Tasks (page 9-5)/Message (page 4-2)/Bookmark (page 5-6)/Notepad (page 9-8)→

Select a file to be saved as vObject→→

Export→→**One**→→**Phone Memory, Data Folder or Memory Card**→→Select a folder→

- To save multiple files, do the following.

While selecting files to be saved, →

Export→→**Select Multi**→→Select files→→ (Save)/ (Export)

- To save all files, do the following.

While selecting files to be saved, →

Export→→**All**→

■ Importing a vObject into a Function

Data Folder Window **Other Documents**→

Select a vObject→→**To Phone Book, To Cal./Tasks, To Message, To Bookmarks or To Notepad**→→**One**→

- To import multiple vObjects, do the following.

Select Multi→→Select vObjects→



Managing Files/Folders




Change Folder and File Names

■ Changing Folder Name

Data Folder Window Select the folder you created→→**Rename Folder**→→Enter a folder name→





- If Security Lock is set to the folder, Handset Code entry is required after selecting **Rename Folder**.


■ Changing File Name

Data Folder Window Select a file→→**Rename**→→Enter a file name→

- If you change the file name for a music or movie file, the title will not be changed.



Change File Order

Data Folder Window Select a folder→→Select a file→→**Change View**→→**Sort by**→

- Select the sort criteria→
- Files in the memory card cannot be sorted by titles.




Move a Folder

Data Folder Window Select the folder you created →
 → **Move Folder** →  → Enter your
 Handset Code

- When moving a folder created in **Ring Song • Tone** or **Music**, do the following.
Phone Memory or **Memory Card** →  →
Ring Song • Tone or **Music** → 







Copy Folders and Files

■ Copying a Folder









Data Folder Window Select the folder you created →
 → **Copy Folder** →  → Enter your
 Handset Code → **Phone Memory** or **Memory
 Card** → 

- When copying a folder created in **Ring Song • Tone** or **Music**, select the destination folder from **Ring Song • Tone** or **Music**.







■ Copying One File



Data Folder Window Select a folder →  → Select a
 file →  → **Copy** →  → **One** →  → **Phone
 Memory** or **Memory Card** →  → Select the
 destination folder → 

■ Copying Multiple Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder →  →  →
Copy →  → **Select Multi** →  → Select files
 →  →  → **Phone Memory** or **Memory
 Card** →  → Select the destination folder → 




■ Copying All Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder →  →  →
Copy →  → **All** →  → Enter your Handset
 Code → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** →
 → Select the destination folder → 

- To copy files to a new folder, do the following.
 While selecting the destination folder,  →
 Enter a folder name → 
- If Details indicate that the file is **Unavailable** for forwarding, the file cannot be copied.
 However, some files in **My Pictograms** folder may be able to be copied even if Details indicate that they are **Unavailable** for forwarding.
- When you copy a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a file in MPEG-4 format (.3GP and .MP4) to another folder, select the fixed folder first and then select the destination folder.

Delete Folders and Files

■ Deleting a Folder

Data Folder Window Select the folder you created →
 → **Delete Folder** →  → Enter your
 Handset Code → **YES** → 

■ Deleting One File

Data Folder Window Select a folder →  → Select a
 file →  → **Delete** →  → **One** →  → **YES**
 → 

■ Deleting Multiple Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder →  →  →
Delete →  → **Select Multi** →  → Select files
 →  →  → **YES** → 

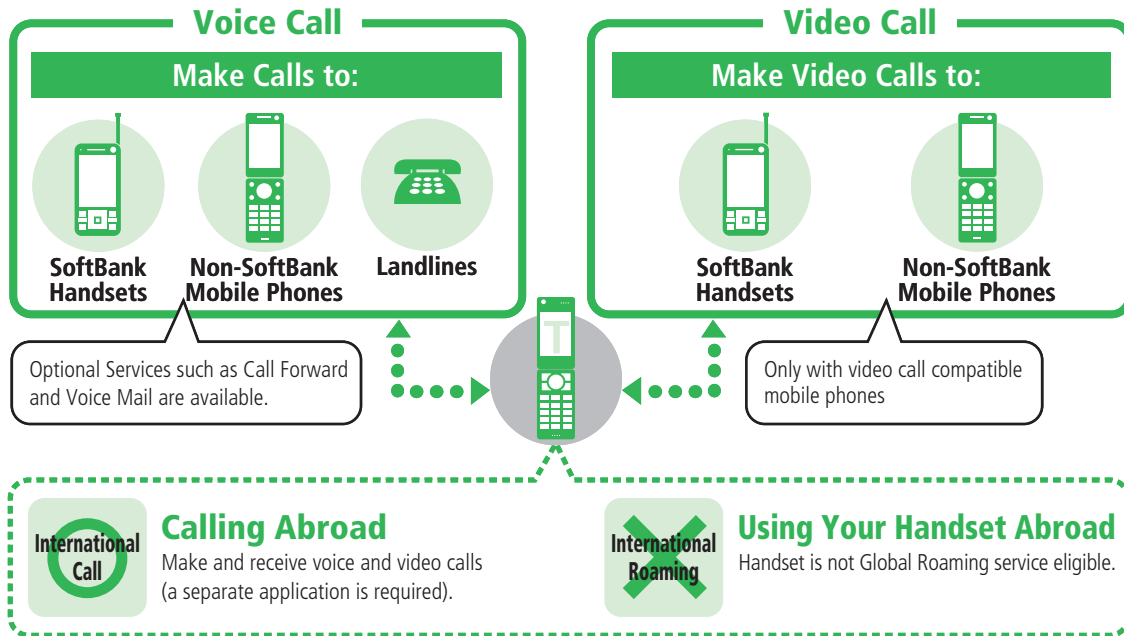
■ Deleting All Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder →  →  →
Delete →  → **All** →  → Enter your Handset
 Code → **YES** → 

Making Calls	3-2
Voice Call	3-4
Answering Machine	3-5
Video Call	3-7
Call Log	3-9
Viewing Dialed Numbers and Received Calls	3-9
Optional Services	3-10
Overview	3-10
Advanced Features	3-12

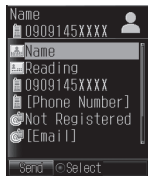
Making Calls

3
Call



Checking Your Phone Number

- 1 Press → **Phone Book** → → **My Details** →



- To check your phone number during a call:
Press during a call → **My Details** →

About Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) are available, even when Password Lock and/or Call Barring is active.

- If a video call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.

Emergency Call Location Notification

Caller's location is notified to emergency agencies for emergency calls (110, 119 and 118).

Location information to be sent as emergency call location notification is either base station information* or GPS information. Since this handset supports GPS, it uses GPS functions wherever GPS signal is available and sends GPS information. GPS information sent from the handset is recorded in Location Logs.

* If handset signal is received by a distant base station, location information may not be accurate.

- When GPS information is sent as location notification, it is stored in Location Logs (page 9-32).
- Location notification may be inaccurate, depending on the caller's location and signal strength.
- This system may not operate if the responding agency has not installed the proper system.
- If emergency numbers (110, 118 and 119) are dialed with the 184 prefix, location information is not provided. However, emergency agencies may retrieve location information in life-threatening cases.
- No application fees or transmission fees apply.

More Features



My Details

(▶ page 3-12)

Making a Voice Call

This section explains how to make a voice call in Japan.

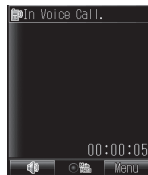
1 Enter a phone number

- Include the area code for all numbers.
- Press or press and hold to delete the entire number and return to Standby. Press to delete the last number entered.
- For details on making a call from Phone Book, see page 2-18.



Dial Window

2 Press



Voice Call Window

- Use or press /TV during a call to adjust the earpiece volume.

3 Press to end the call

- Antenna is built into the handset. Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3). Do not cover this area by affixing stickers, or any other items. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- The TV Antenna is only for receiving television signals. Retract the antenna when TV is not activated.
- The orientation and location of the handset may affect signal strength.
- When Cost Limit is set and the limit is reached, outgoing voice calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Answering a Voice Call

The handset notifies you of incoming voice calls by incoming image, External Light, ringtone and/or vibration.


1 Press /○ when a call is received



- Use or press /TV to adjust the ringtone volume while receiving an incoming call.
- To stop the ringtone while receiving an incoming call, press and hold .

2 Press to end the call

- Since the earpiece and speaker are close to each other, loud sound from the speaker may directly enter your ear at audio playback or when receiving incoming calls, which may adversely affect your hearing. Be careful about the handset position towards your ear so that loud sound does not directly enter your ear.
- In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual ringtone volume is fixed at level 3 even if it is set higher than level 3; and the maximum volume is level 3 if the ringtone volume is set to *Ascending Volume* or *Descending Volume*.

Speed Dial

You can make a call to a phone number saved in the handset Phone Book by pressing just the last one or two digits of the entry number 0000 to 0099 and then pressing .

- 1 Enter the last two digits of the entry number 0010 to 0099 
 - For entry numbers 0000 through 0009, enter the last digit only and press .

Making an International Call

This section explains how to make an international call from Japan.

- A separate application is required for using the international call service. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).
- The handset does not support international roaming, so it cannot be used outside of Japan.

- 1 Enter a phone number  
Intl. Calls 













Country Number List Window

- 2 Select a country  
- 3 Press  to end the call

Answering Machine

Record a caller's message to your handset when you are unable to answer a voice call.

- 1 Press and hold 
 - When you cannot answer the call, the outgoing message plays and recording starts.
 - When recording capacity becomes full or the call ends, it stops automatically.
 - To cancel Answering Machine, press and hold .
 - Press and hold  or  to activate Answering Machine while receiving an incoming call.

- Answering Machine is not available for video calls and Call Waiting.
- When five messages are recorded, Answering Machine is disabled. Do the following to delete messages.
 Press    
Delete  
- Messages may not be recorded when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver.
- When Manner Mode is set in Drive Mode, you cannot cancel Answering Machine.
- When Manner Mode is set in Original Mode, Answering Machine setting in Original Mode is given priority. To set or cancel Answering Machine while in Original Mode, change the Answering Machine setting in Original Mode.

Playing Messages

1 Press  → Select a message → 



More Features



Outgoing Call Functions (▶ page 3-12)

Incoming Call Functions (▶ page 3-13)

Answering Machine Functions
(▶ page 3-13)

Functions During Voice/Video Calls
(▶ page 3-13)

Functions During Voice Calls
(▶ page 3-14)



Response Settings for Incoming Calls
(▶ page 13-9)

- Answer Incoming Calls by Opening the Handset (Open to Talk)
- Set Any Key Answer

Answering Machine Settings
(▶ page 13-9)

- Set the Answering Machine Response Time

International Call Settings
(▶ page 13-22)

- Change the International Code
- Add Country Codes to the Country Number List

Earphone-Microphone Settings
(▶ page 13-24)


- Save a Phone Number for Earphone-Microphone Call
- Set Auto Answer

Video Call

Make video calls with another party. The other party must use a video call compatible handset.

- Change the handset into Self-portrait position to transfer your live image taken by the camera.
- When the other's voice is output from the speaker during a video call, the volume is fixed at level 3, even if the speaker volume is set higher than level 3.

Making a Video Call



- 1 Enter a phone number and press 



The other party answers your video call.















Video Call Window

- When Self-view (page 13-23) is set to *ON*, confirm your camera image to be transferred to the other party, and then press  to make a call.
- Use  during a call to adjust the speaker (earpiece) volume.

- 2 Press  to end the call

- When Cost Limit is set and the limit is reached, outgoing video calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.


Video Call Icons



-  Video Call
-  Mute My Voice
-  Mute All
-  Faster Moving Mode
-  Standard Mode
-  Better Picture Mode
-  Handsfree ON
-  Handsfree (Bluetooth® connection)
-  Image Transfer OFF
-  Sending Picture
-  Voice Connection Established
-  Video Connection Established

Answering a Video Call

The handset notifies you of incoming video calls by incoming image, External Light, ringtone and/or vibration.

- 1 Press  /  /  when a video call is received

A confirmation window appears. Select *YES* and press  to send out your live image.

- Press  () while the handset is ringing/vibrating to view yourself before sending your live image.

- 2 Press  to end the call

More Features



Outgoing Call Functions (▶ page 3-12)

Incoming Call Functions (▶ page 3-13)

Incoming Video Call Functions

(▶ page 3-13)

Functions During Voice/Video Calls

(▶ page 3-13)

Functions During Video Calls

(▶ Page 3-15)



Video Call Settings (▶ page 13-23)

- Set Alternative Picture
- Set Self-view Confirmation
- Set Incoming Image Quality
- Add a Phone Number to Auto Answer List
- Set Mute
- Set Audio Output
- Set Hold Image

Viewing Dialed Numbers and Received Calls

1 Press /



Call Log Window

- Press / to switch between Dialed (outgoing call log) and Received (incoming call log).
- Press (/) to switch between outgoing S! Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log.
- Press (/) to switch between incoming S! Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log.

More Features



Call Log Functions (page 3-15)
Functions for Call Time and Cost
(page 3-16)



Call Cost Settings (page 13-22)
• Set Cost Display Currency
• Display Call Cost After Each Call
• Set Cost Limit

Overview

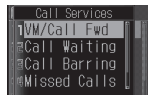
- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).
- Operations are unavailable when out of range.

Call Forward	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Transfer calls to Voice Mail Center when handset is out of range or line is busy. Access messages from handset or touchtone phones (page 3-11).
Call Waiting*	Place a call on hold to receive another incoming call (page 3-17).
Multiparty Call*	Make or receive a call during a call and talk to multiple parties simultaneously (page 3-17).
Call Barring	Restrict outgoing/incoming calls and SMS (page 3-17).
Caller ID	Show or hide your number when making calls (page 3-12).

*Separate application required. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

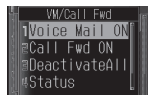
Activating Call Forward

- 1 Press **Settings** → **Call Settings** → **Call Services**



Call Services Setting Window

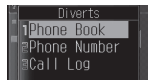
- 2 Select **VM/Call Fwd**



VM/Call Fwd Window

- 3 Select **Call Fwd ON** → Select a type of call
- 4 Select **All Calls** or **No Answer** → Set response time (skip this step for **All Calls**)

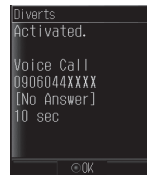
- All Calls: Forwards calls immediately.
- No Answer: Forwards calls after set ring time elapses.



- 5 Select **Phone Book, Phone Number** or **Call Log** → Select or enter phone number (twice)

- Phone Book: Search from Phone Book.
- Phone Number: Enter number directly.
- Call Log: Select number from Call Log.

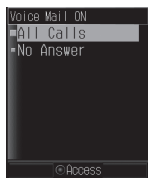
- 6 Connect to the network



- 7 Press **OK**

Activating Voice Mail

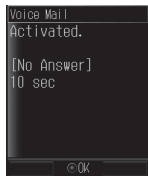
- 1 From VM/Call Fwd Window, select *Voice Mail ON* → ●



- 2 Select *All Calls* or *No Answer* → ● → Set response time (skip this step for *All Calls*) → ●

- All Calls: Forwards calls to Voice Mail Center immediately.
- No Answer: Forwards calls to Voice Mail Center after set ring time elapses.

- 3 Connect to the network



- 4 Press ●

- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. If one service is activated, the other will be deactivated (Voice Mail is available with Call Forward for Video Calls).

Receiving Calls After Activating Call Forward/Voice Mail

Press while the ringtone is sounding to talk to the caller. If you set *All Calls*, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to the preset phone number or Voice Mail Center.

Voice Mail Service Options

Access the Personal Options menu from Voice Mail Center to set/customize outgoing message. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Missed Call Notification

Information Prompt notifies you about the calls that the handset could not receive because it was out of the service area or the power was off while Voice Mail was set. If Voice Mail Center receives a message while you are on another line, the handset receives a notification.

- 1 Enter *1414* →

- Follow the voice prompts.

Checking Messages

- 1 From VM/Call Fwd Window, select *Listen VM* → ●

Deactivating Call Forward/Voice Mail

- 1 From VM/Call Fwd Window, select *Deactivate All* → ●
Call Forward and Voice Mail are deactivated.

- If Call Forward/Voice Mail is not activated, perform the following to forward an incoming call.
 - Voice Call: Press (Divert) while handset is ringing/vibrating
 - Video Call: Press → *Divert* while handset is ringing/vibrating

More Features



Functions for Optional Services

(▶ page 3-16)

Making Calls

From → **Dial Window** page 3-4

Voice Call Window page 3-4

Video Call Window page 3-7

My Details

Save Information to My Details

[Save My Details]

● → **Phone Book** → ● → **My Details** → ●
 → Select an item → ▾ → **Edit** → ● → Enter information → ● → ☑

■ Entering a Name

● → **Phone Book** → ● → **My Details** → ●
 → **Name** → ● → Select an item → ▾ → **Edit** → ●
 → Enter a name → ● → ☑ (twice)

Use Location Information

[Personal Info.]

● → **Phone Book** → ● → **My Details** → ● → **Personal Info.** → ● → **Location Exist** → ▾
 → **Open Map, Location Mail, Add Location** or **Delete** → ●

● To save a location, select **Personal Info.** and then do the following.

No Location → ▾ → **Add Location** → ●

Outgoing Call Functions

Redial

[Dialed Numbers]

☎ → Select an entry → ☎ → **POWER** to end the call

● To make a video call, select an entry and then press ☑.

● To make an S! Circle Talk call, press and hold ☑ when My Status is **Online** (page 10-4).

Call from Received Calls

[Received Calls]

☎ → Select an entry → ☎ → **POWER** to end the call

● To make a video call, select an entry and then press ☑.

Send/Hide Caller ID

[Show My ID]

Dial Window ▾ → **Hide My ID** or **Show My ID** → ●

Set Earpiece Volume

[Earpiece Volume]

● → **Settings** → ● → **Sounds** → ● → **Earpiece Vol.** → ● → Adjust the volume → ●

Set Caller ID On/Off

[Show My Number]

● → **Settings** → ● → **Call Settings** → ● → **Show My Number** → ● → Select **Show My ID, Hide My ID** or **OFF** → ●

- If you select **OFF**, the settings you chose when you subscribed to Caller ID service apply.
- Caller ID setting has the following options, and they are given priority in the order of ① to ③ if they are all set or operated.

① **Dial Window** ▾ → **Hide My ID** or **Show My ID** → ●

② Setting for Show My Number


③ Application for Caller ID service

Make Voice Calls Using Earphone-Microphone

[Earphone-Microphone Call]

- Make one-touch calls from Earphone-Microphone. Before making a call, save a phone number to Earphone-Microphone (page 13-24).

Insert Earphone-Microphone plug into earphone jack → Press and hold the microphone switch to dial the set phone number → Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call


- Press and hold the switch again to cancel dialing.
- Press  to end the call.

Incoming Call Functions

Reject an Incoming Call


[Reject Calls]


 when a call is received

- To reject an incoming video call, press  and select **Reject Call**.

Place Incoming Call on Hold

[Hold Answer]

 when a voice or video call is received

- The caller is charged for the call while placed on hold.
- Pressing  while the caller is on hold terminates the call.

- When you answer a video call that has been placed on hold, the call is connected without the confirmation window asking whether to send the camera image.

Answer Calls with Earphone-Microphone


[Earphone-Microphone Answer]

Insert Earphone-Microphone plug into earphone jack → Press and hold the microphone switch when a call is received → Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call

- Press  to end the call.

Answering Machine Functions

Delete Recorded Messages

● → **Settings** → ● → **Call Settings** → ● → **Ans Machine** → ● → **Recordings** → ● → Select a message →  → **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ●

Incoming Video Call Functions

Answer Incoming Video Calls Automatically

[Auto Answer]

- When Auto Answer is set to **ON**, video calls received from phone numbers on the Auto Answer List are answered automatically without having to press a key, if the handset is open.
- Regardless of Manner Mode setting, the speaker will beep and the video call is automatically connected.


● → **Settings** → ● → **Call Settings** → ● → **Video Call** → ● → **Auto Answer** → ● → **ON/OFF** → ● (twice) → **ON** → ●

Functions During Voice/Video Calls

Mute Audio During a Call

[Mute]

■ Voice Calls

Voice Call Window  → **Mute My Voice** or **Mute All** → ●

■ Video Calls

Voice Call Window  → **Mute** → ● → **Mute My Voice** or **Mute All** → ●

- Press ● to cancel the mute during a call.

Place Call in Progress on Hold

[Hold Call]

Voice Call Window / Video Call Window → **Hold**



- Subscription to Call Waiting (page 3-17) or Multiparty Call (page 3-17) is required to use the Hold feature for voice calls. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Functions During Voice Calls

Record the Other Party's Voice During a Call

[Record Voice Memo]

Voice Call Window → **Voice Record** →

- Recording stops when the maximum time is reached or the call ends. To stop recording manually, press .
- To play a recording, do the following.
 - **Tools** → → **Useful Tools** → → **Voice Recorder** → → **Recordings** → → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → → Select a file →

Save Number Memo During a Call

[Save Number Memo]

Voice Call Window Press the keys on the keypad

- After the call ends, the number memo is automatically saved.
- You can enter the following numbers and symbols.
 - 0 to 9, ✕, #, +, -, P
- To check a number memo, do the following.
 - **Tools** → → **Useful Tools** → → **Number Memo** → → Select a number memo →

Use Handsfree Call

[Handsfree Call]

Voice Call Window

- To cancel handsfree, press ()

Send Touch Tones During a Call

[Send Touch Tones]

■ Sending Individual Touch Tones

Voice Call Window Press any of to , and

■ Sending Touch Tones Sequentially

- Phone Book is useful for storing sequences of touch tones (page 2-16) for remotely operating your home answering machine and other devices.

Voice Call Window → **Phone Book** → →

Select a Phone Book entry → → Select a touch tone sequence (phone number) → → **Send Tone** →

■ Using Pause (P) in Touch Tone Sequences

- The pause "P" allows you to send sequences of touch tones, each separated with a pause "P". It is convenient if you register multiple touch tones such as remote operation numbers of your home phone.

Example: To store 03123XXXX3 (phone number), #7777 (answering machine access code), and #1 (answering machine playback command), enter the following in the Phone Number field.
03123XXXX3P#7777P#1

Open a Phone Book entry containing the touch tones → (A call is made to the phone number before the first "P") → (The sequence of touch tones before the next "P" is sent)

- Repeat this step until all the touch tones have been sent.

Functions During Video Calls

Toggle Audio Output (Earpiece/Speaker) [Switch Audio]

Video Call Window   

Zoom Outgoing Image


[Zoom]

Video Call Window 

- Zoom is unavailable when a still picture is set for outgoing image.

Switch Outgoing Image During a Video Call [Switch Outgoing Images]



Video Call Window  (Switch)

- Press  to toggle between the alternative picture and camera image.

Switch Outgoing/Incoming Image Windows

[Switch Windows]




Video Call Window  \Rightarrow *Screen Set.* \Rightarrow 

Switch \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow *In. Prior, Incoming Only,*
Out. Prior or *Outgoing Only* \Rightarrow 

Set a Still Picture as the Outgoing Image [Send Picture]

Video Call Window  \Rightarrow *Send Picture* \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow
Send Pic. ON \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow *Phone Memory* or
Memory Card \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow Select a picture \Rightarrow 

Change Alternative Picture [Alternative Picture]

Video Call Window  \Rightarrow *Alt. Picture* \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow *Alt.*
Pic. ON \Rightarrow 

■ Selecting the Image Preinstalled in the Handset

Preset \Rightarrow 

■ Selecting an Image from Data Folder/ Memory Card

Phone Memory or *Memory Card* \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow

Select an image \Rightarrow 

- Handset automatically adjusts the picture size.

Change Incoming Image Quality [Image Quality]

Video Call Window  \Rightarrow *Screen Set.* \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow
Image Quality \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow Select the image output
format \Rightarrow 

Call Log Functions

From \Rightarrow Call Log Window page 3-9

Delete Call Log Records [Delete/Delete All]

■ Deleting a Record

Call Log Window Select a record \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow *Delete* \Rightarrow
 \Rightarrow *Delete* \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow *YES* \Rightarrow 

■ Deleting All Records

Call Log Window  \Rightarrow *Delete* \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow *Delete*
All \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow Enter your Handset Code \Rightarrow *YES* \Rightarrow 

Lock Call Log

[Call Log Lock]

Call Log Window  \Rightarrow *Call Log Lock* \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow

Enter your Handset Code \Rightarrow *Lock* \Rightarrow 

- To cancel the lock, select *Unlock*.

Functions for Call Time and Cost

View Call Time and Cost

[Call Time & Cost]

● → *Settings* → ● → *Call Settings* → ● → *Call Time&Cost* → ● → *All Calls* or *Last Call* → ● → *Time* or *Cost* → ●

- The displayed call time/cost serves as a guide only. The actual call cost billed may be different.
- The total call time does not include mail communications, Web browsing, and S! Circle Talk connection and talk time.
- Up to 277 hours 46 minutes and 39 seconds can be displayed for the total call time.
- Sum of charges appears for Multiparty Call (page 3-17).
- The total call cost does not include mail communication and Web browsing charges, and the charge for the number of remarks made during S! Circle Talk.
- When you make an international call, the call cost is not displayed.
- Call Cost may be unavailable depending on your subscription. In that case, the total cost display and cost limit settings are not available.

Reset Total Call Time

● → *Settings* → ● → *Call Settings* → ● → *Call Time&Cost* → ● → *All Calls* → ● → *Time* → ● → *Reset* → ● → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* → ●

Reset Total Call Cost

● → *Settings* → ● → *Call Settings* → ● → *Call Time&Cost* → ● → *All Calls* → ● → *Cost* → ● → *Reset* → ● → Enter your PIN2 (page 14-2) → ● → *YES* → ●

Functions for Optional Services

From → *Voice Call Window* page 3-4
Call Services Setting Window page 3-10
VM/Call Fwd Window page 3-10

Optional Service Setting Status

Check Optional Service Setting Status

[Status]

■ Checking Call Forward/Voice Mail Status

VM/Call Fwd Window *Status* → ●

■ Checking Call Waiting Status

Call Services Setting Window *Call Waiting* → ● → *Status* → ●

■ Checking Call Barring Status

Call Services Setting Window *Call Barring* → ● → *Status* → ● → Select a type of restriction → ●

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

[Call Waiting On/Off]

Call Services Setting Window **Call Waiting** → ● →
ON or **OFF** → ●

Answer an Incoming Call During a Call

[Call Waiting]




During a call, the Call Waiting tone is heard →

 → **Answer** → ●

Switch Between Two Callers

[Switch Parties]

During Call Waiting →  


- Press   to switch between parties.
- If a caller terminates a call during Call Waiting, a ringtone sounds and **Holdng.** is displayed. Press  to start talking with the other person on hold.

Multiparty Call

Call Another Party

[Call During a Call]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number → 




- Alternatively, press  and select an entry from Phone Book (page 2-18) or Call Log (page 3-9).

Switch Between Parties

[Switch Parties]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number →  →


When the other party answers,  


- Press   to switch between parties.
- If a caller terminates a call during a call, a ringtone sounds and **Holdng.** is displayed. Press  to start talking with another person on hold.


Talk to Multiple Parties

[Multiparty Call]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number → 

When the other party answers,  → **Multiparty**
 → ● → **Multiparty** → ●

- During a multiparty call, press  to end the call with all parties simultaneously.
- If one person ends the call during a multiparty call, the other parties remain connected.

- To talk to just one person during a multiparty call:
 Select a party to talk with →  → **Multiparty**
 → ● → **Private** → ●

Call Barring

Restrict Outgoing and Incoming Voice/ Video Calls and SMS Messages

[Call Barring]

Call Services Setting Window **Call Barring** → ●

■ Restricting Outgoing Calls and SMS

Outgoing Call → ● → **All Outgoings, All Out-Intl.** or **Out-Intl.*** → ● → Enter your Call Barring Service Code (page 1-14) → Connect to the network automatically → ●

■ Restricting Incoming Calls and SMS

Incoming Call → ● → **All Incomings** or **All If Roamed*** → ● → Enter your Call Barring Service Code → Connect to the network automatically → ●

* The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the service center.

■ Deactivating Call Barring

Cancel All → ● → Enter your Call Barring Service Code → Connect to the network automatically → ●

- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.
- You can still make emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) when Call Barring is activated.
- You cannot use **All Outgoings** and **All Incomings** if you have started using the Call Forward or Voice Mail service.
- If Call Barring Service Code is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, Call Barring settings are locked. Change Call Barring Service Code and Center Access Code (page 1-14). For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Change Call Barring Service Code [Call Barring Service Code]

Call Services Setting Window **Call Barring** → ● →
Security Code → ● → Enter your current Call
Barring Service Code → Enter your new Call
Barring Service Code → ● → Re-enter your new
Call Barring Service Code for confirmation → ●

- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

Messaging	4-2
Message Types	4-2
Customizing Handset Address	4-3
Sending Messages	4-4
Sending S! Mail	4-4
Sending SMS	4-6
Incoming Messages	4-8
Opening New Messages	4-8
Checking Received Messages	4-8
Replying to Messages	4-9
Organizing/Using Messages	4-10
Sorting Messages	4-11
Advanced Features	4-13

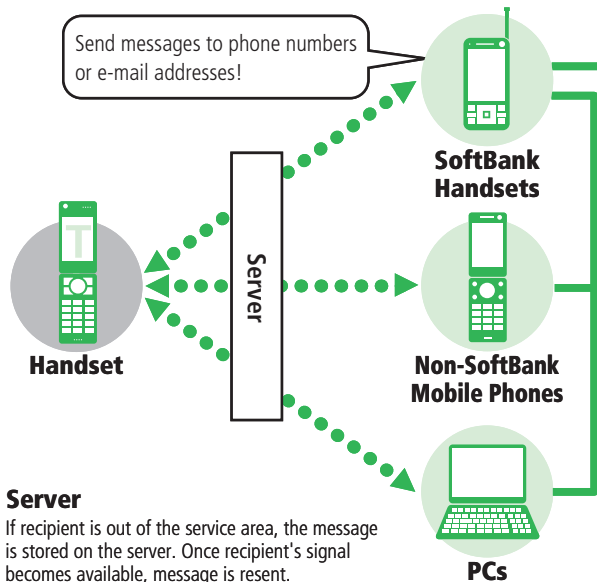
Messaging

Message Types

Handset supports S! Mail (MMS) and SMS.

4

Messaging



Server

If recipient is out of the service area, the message is stored on the server. Once recipient's signal becomes available, message is resent.

Available Messaging Services

SMS

Use Short Message Service (SMS) to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail (separate contract required)

Exchange long text messages, pictures, sounds, etc. with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets, non-SoftBank mobile phones and PCs that support e-mail.

S! Mail is better than ever.

Arrange Mail

Change text size, text color, background color and insert images and pictograms.

Feeling Mail

Set your mood when sending messages to compatible SoftBank handsets. Recipient's handset shows your mood accordingly.

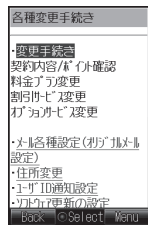
Customizing Handset Address

Change the account name (part before @) of your handset e-mail address.

□□□□□□□□□□□□@softbank.ne.jp

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).
- This operation uses Yahoo! Keitai access.
- Before using Messaging service, retrieve network connection information (page 1-11).
- A random alphanumeric text string is assigned at the time of contract. Composing a long e-mail address using single-byte alphanumeric and available symbols is an effective way for preventing spam.

- 1 Press  → 設定・申込 (Settings/Applications) →  → 各種変更手続き (Changing Applications) → 




- 2 Select メール各種設定(オリジナルメール設定)(Mail Settings/Original Mail) → 
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

Sending S! Mail

4

Messaging

- 1 Press and hold 





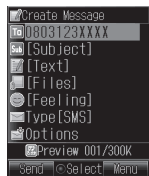
Create Message Window




- 2 Select **Address** → 



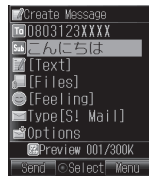
Set Address Window

- 3 Select **Phone Number or Email** →  →
Enter a phone number/e-mail address
→ 

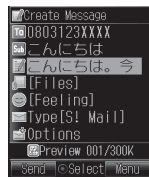




- To select an address from Phone Book: Select **Phone Book** →  → Select an entry →  → Select a phone number/e-mail address → 

- 4 Select **Subject** →  → Enter a subject
→ 



- 5 Select **Text** →  → Enter text → 




- 6 Press  (**Send**) → **OK** → 

- If you select **Notify Only Once** in the sending confirmation/completed window, the window will not be displayed from the next time.

- If you enter an e-mail address or input text that cannot be sent by SMS, the mail type automatically changes to S! Mail.
- If the other party's handset doesn't support S! Mail, it might be displayed differently.

Attaching Files

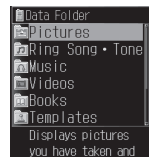
Attach an image or melody to an S! Mail.

- 1 From Create Message Window, select **Files** → 

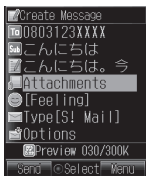


Attachments Window

- 2 Select **Data Folder** →  → **Phone Memory or Memory Card** → 



3 Select a folder → ● → Select a file → ●



- Some files may not be able to be attached to a message. To find out whether a certain file can be attached or not, check Details of the file (page 2-30).

Feeling Mail

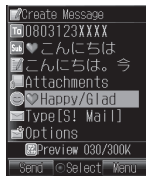
Feeling Mail can notify the recipient of arrival of a message by special graphics expressing the sender's mood that appear in the Information Prompt, as well as by ringtone, vibration and External Light.

- Reception operations of incoming Feeling Mail vary according to the recipient's handset.

1 From Create Message Window, select *Feeling* → ●



2 Select a pictograph → ●



- If you send a message with Feeling Mail graphics to a handset that doesn't support Feeling Mail, the graphics will be displayed as a regular pictograph in the subject field.

Arrange Mail

This function allows you to make your message more visually appealing by changing the size and color of text, background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into text.

Example: Changing the font size and background color, and inserting a picture

1 From Create Message Window, select *Text* → ●

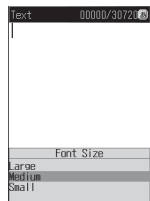
2 Press **▽** → *Arrange* → ●



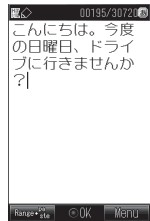
Arrange Window

- To decorate text using a mail template: Press **▽** → *Templates* → ● → *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → ● → Select a template → ● → *YES* → ● → Edit text → ●

3 Select *Font Size* →



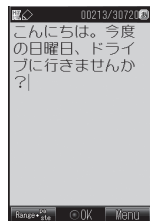
4 Select a font size → Input text



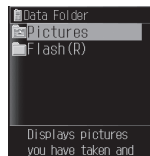
5 Press *Arrange* → *ScreenColor* →



6 Select a background color →



7 Press *Picture* → *Phone Memory or Memory Card*

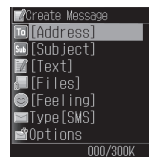


8 Select a folder → Select an image

Sending SMS

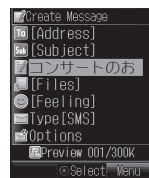
Send short text messages to other SoftBank handsets using phone numbers as address.

1 Press and hold *Create Message*



Create Message Window

2 Select *Text* → Enter text →

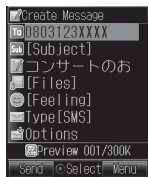


3 Select *Address* →




Set Address Window

- 4** Select *Phone Number* → ● → Enter a phone number → ●



- To select a phone number from Phone Book:
Select *Phone Book* → ● → Select an entry → ● → Select a phone number → ●

- 5** Press  (*Send*) → OK → ●

- If you select *Notify Only Once* in the sending confirmation/completed window, the window will not be displayed from the next time.

More Features



- Creating Messages** (▶ page 4-13)
- Attaching Files** (▶ page 4-14)
- Arrange Mail Functions** (▶ page 4-15)
- Outgoing Message Functions** (▶ page 4-15)



- Messaging Settings** (▶ page 13-14)

- Add Recipients to Simple Input List
- Set Groups
- Set a Signature
- Set Default Mail Type
- Display/Hide Notification When Mail Type is Switched

- Outgoing Messages** (▶ page 13-15)

- Set the Sending Confirmation Window
- Set the Vibration When Sending is Confirmed
- Check Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients
- Set the Length of Time Sent Messages are Stored on Server
- Set Message Priority
- Specify a Time Before Delivering Messages to Recipients
- Save a Reply Address
- Edit the SMS Center Number (+819066519300)

Opening New Messages

When a message arrives, ringtone sounds and animation plays. When a "Feeling Mail" arrives, graphics indicating the sender's mood appears in the background of Information Prompt. Incoming messages are saved to **Received**.

Check Information Prompt to confirm any unread messages. When you have more than one unread Feeling Mail, background graphics will be that of the most recent message.

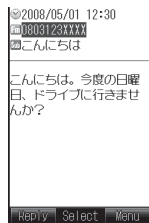
- When you receive an S! Mail message, the reception method varies depending on the message size or whether there are any attachments. The reception method is set to **Immediate** at time of purchase so that all the data is downloaded automatically. The reception method can be changed to **Phone # Only** or **Deferred** (page 13-16).

1 Information Prompt appears



2 Select New Messages → ●

3 Select a folder → ● → Select a message



- To retrieve new messages from the server: Press **ca** → **Retrieve New** → ●
- If Priority is set to **Pause**, incoming messages are notified by a confirmation window during handset use (except in Standby). Select **Read Now** or **Later**. To delete a message without reading it, select **Delete**.

Checking Received Messages

1 Press **ca** → Message Box → ● →

Received



2 Select a folder → ● → Select a message



- If Retrieve Mode is set to *Deferred*, the initial portion of text is delivered as an S! Mail notification and complete message is stored on the server if:
 - Text exceeds 284 single-byte characters (284 bytes)
 - Files are attached
 - Message is sent to multiple addresses
 - Subject field contains 41 or more single-byte characters
 - Sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters
- If you receive the rest of the message, transmission fees may be charged on the recipient's side. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).
- It may be impossible to display/play a file until you obtain a content key (content license) depending on the file.
- Messages exceeding 300 KB cannot be fully retrieved, part of them is deleted.

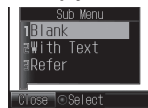
Replying to Messages

The Create Message Window opens and the recipient's address is automatically set.

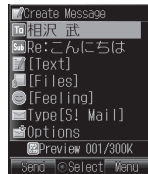
- When replying to an S! Mail, the subject to which **Re:** is prefixed is automatically inserted in the subject field.

Example: Replying by creating new text

- 1 Press → **Message Box** → → **Received**
- 2 Select a folder → → **Select a message**
→ → **(Reply)**



- 3 Select **Blank** →



- To reply to the sender of a message with multiple addresses, select **To Sender** or **To All**.
- To reply by quoting the received message text, select **With Text**; to reply by referring to the received text, select **Refer**.

More Features



- **Receiving Messages** (▶ page 4-16)
- **Server Operations** (▶ page 4-16)



- **Display Settings** (▶ page 13-15)

- Set the Font Size
- Set the Scroll Unit
- Display/Hide Address and Subject When Sending/Receiving Messages

- **Incoming Messages** (▶ page 13-16)

- Set New Message Retrieve Mode
- Set Automatic Display of Picture Files
- Set Automatic Playback of Sound Files
- Set Spam Filter

- **3D Pictograms** (▶ page 13-16)

- Set the Criteria for Displaying Received Messages with 3D Pictograms
- Set the Font and Background Colors for 3D Pictograms


Organizing/Using Messages

Received and sent messages are saved to the **Received** and **Sent** message folders respectively. Created messages that have not been sent are saved to **Drafts**, and messages that have failed to be sent are saved to **Unsent**.

4

Messaging

• About Auto-delete

- If Message Box memory is full, the oldest message is deleted when receiving/sending a new message. Set Protect (page 4-17) to save important messages. Alternatively, set Auto-delete (page 13-17) to **Do not Set**. However, when memory is full, a warning appears and  appears on the display. Delete unnecessary messages to receive new messages (page 4-18).
- When unable to receive S! Mail notifications due to insufficient memory, delete unnecessary messages. Once memory space becomes available, S! Mail notifications are redelivered by Retry function. Alternatively, retrieve Mail List (page 4-16) to receive the notifications. For details on redelivery of S! Mail notifications, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

1 Press → Message Box →






















Message Box Window

2 Select **Received** or **Sent** → Select a folder →



Message List Window

① Message Status

	Unread Message with Attachment(s)
	Unread Message without Attachments
	Read Message with Attachment(s)
	Read Message without Attachments
	Unread S! Mail Notification
	Read S! Mail Notification
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
	Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
	Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
	Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/No Delivery Confirmation
	Sent Message without Attachments/No Delivery Confirmation
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)
	Partly Sent Message without Attachments
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
	Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report

	Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
	Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
	Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Delivery Failed
	Unsent Message without Attachments/Delivery Failed
	Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Waiting Delivery
	Unsent Message without Attachments/Waiting Delivery
	Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Sending
	Unsent Message without Attachments/Sending
	Draft with Attachment(s)
	Draft without Attachments

②S! Mail/SMS

	S! Mail
	SMS
	SMS on the USIM Card

③Priority/Protection

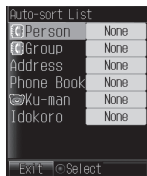
	High/Protected
	High/Not Protected
	Normal/Protected
	Low/Protected
	Low/Not Protected

Sorting Messages

Received and sent messages can be sorted into folders under **Received** and **Sent** of the Message Box according to the conditions you set.

1 Open Message Box → Select a folder →

→ **Sort Setting** →



2 Select the sorting criteria →

Specify the conditions →

- Select **Person** to set an individual entry in Phone Book as the sorting condition.
- Select **Group** to set a Group entry in Phone Book as the sorting condition.
- Select **Address** to set the specified addresses, regardless of whether they are saved to Phone Book, as the sorting condition.
- Select **Phone Book** to set those addresses that are either saved or not saved to Phone Book as the sorting condition.
- Select **Ku-man** to set messages from Ku-man as the sorting condition.
- Select **Idokoro** to set Departure Mail, Arrival Mail, and Simple Notice as the sorting condition.

More Features



Organizing Messages (▶ page 4-17)

Using Messages (▶ page 4-18)



Message Box Settings (▶ page 13-17)

- Do Not Auto-delete Old Messages
- Switch Between Folder View and All Message View
- Switch Between Mixed View and Separate View

Message List Display Settings

(▶ page 13-17)

- Switch the Message List Display Mode
- Split the Message List Window

Message List Window Settings

(▶ page 13-18)

- Display Messages According to the Specified Criteria
- Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Phone Number/E-mail Address
- Add a Phone Number/E-mail Address to a Phone Book Entry
- Switch Between Unread and Read
- Switch All Messages in a Folder Between Unread and Read

Mini Tool Setting in the Message List Window

(▶ page 13-18)

- Set Mini Tool in the Message List Window

Sending Messages

Creating Messages

From → **Create Message Window** page 4-4
Set Address Window page 4-4

Specify Recipients Quickly

[Simple Input]

- You can select addresses that you have saved to Simple Input list (page 13-14) and enter them.

Set Address Window **Simple Input** → ● → Select an entry → ●

Select an Address from Sent Log/Received Log to Send a Message

[Sent Log/Received Log]

Set Address Window **Sent Log** or **Received Log** → ● → Select an entry → ●

Send a Message to a Group

[Group]

- You can select addresses that you have saved to a Group (page 13-14) and enter them.

Set Address Window **Group** → ● → Select a group → ●

Insert Your Name and Other Information Automatically

[Insert]

Create Message Window **Text** → ● → **Y** →
Insert → ● → **Phone Book, My Details, Phrases, Emoticon, Signature, Notepad, Message Box** or **URL History** → ● → Do the respective operations

Add Recipients

[Add Address]

Create Message Window Select the address field → **Y** → **Add Address** → ● → Select an address → ● → **OK**

- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Delete Recipients

[Delete/Delete All/Select Multi]

■ Deleting One Entry

Create Message Window Select the address field → ● → Select an address → **Y** → **Delete** → ● → **One** → ●

■ Deleting All Entries

Create Message Window Select the address field → **Y** → **Delete All** → ●

■ Deleting Multiple Entries

Create Message Window Select the address field → ● → **Y** → **Delete** → ● → **Select Multi** → ● → Select addresses → ● → **OK**

Save a Recipient's Address to Phone Book [To Phone Book]

Create Message Window Select the address field → ● → Select an address → **Y** → **Save Sender** → ● → **Add New** or **Add** → ●
• See "Creating New Entries" (page 2-16) for entering other items.

Switch To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

[To/Cc/Bcc]

Create Message Window Select the address field → ● → Select an address → **Y** → **To/Cc/Bcc** → ● → **To, Cc** or **Bcc** → ● → **OK**

To: The recipient's address.

Cc: Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the **To** field to other addresses. Addresses entered in the **Cc** (carbon copy) field are also displayed to the other recipients.

Bcc: Addresses entered in the **Bcc** (blind carbon copy) field are not displayed to the other recipients.

Save All Addresses to a Group

[To Group]

Create Message Window Select the address field →
 [v] → **To Group** → ● (twice) → Select a group
 → ● → Enter a group name → ●

Edit Text

[Edit Text]

Create Message Window Select the text → ● → Edit
 the text → ●

Delete Text

[Clear Text]

Create Message Window Select the text → [v] →
Clear Field → ●

Change Mail Type

[Mail Type]

■ Switching to SMS

Create Message Window **Type** → ● → **SMS** → ●

- If a message contains something that cannot be sent by SMS, a confirmation window appears. The contents which cannot be sent will be deleted if you select **Change**.

- If the text exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window appears. If you select **Cut to Fit SMS** after selecting **Change**, the maximum amount of text from the beginning is remained and the excess is deleted.
- If you change the mail type to SMS, the following items are deleted.
 E-mail address, Cc and Bcc setting, Subject, Attached file, Mail template and Arrange settings, Feeling Mail setting

■ Switching to S! Mail

Create Message Window **Type** → ● → **S! Mail** → ●

- By performing the following operations, you can also change the mail type from SMS to S! Mail automatically. If these items are deleted, the mail type will be reset to SMS automatically. Add an e-mail address, Set Cc/Bcc setting, Enter Subject, Attach a file, Set Feeling Mail setting
- If you press [v] and select **Templates** or **Arrange** while entering text, or if you enter text that exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS and press ●, a confirmation window explaining the message cannot be sent as SMS appears. Select **Change to S!Mail**, **Cut to Fit SMS**, or **Edit Message**.

Attaching Files

From → Create Message Window page 4-4
 Attachments Window page 4-4

Shoot Picture or Video Attachment

[Take Picture/Record Video]

■ Picture

Attachments Window **Take Picture** → ● → Take a picture → ●

■ Video

Attachments Window **Record Video** → ● → Record a video → ●

Set Attachments to Open Automatically (Recipient's Handset)

[Auto Play]

- If there are more than one file, you can set just one to play back.
 Create Message Window **Attachments** → ● → Select an attached file → [v] → **Auto Play** → ● → **ON/OFF** → ● → **ON** → ● → **Display** or **Do not Display** → ● → Enter a caption for the attached file to play → ●
- To put a caption to the attached file, select **Display** and enter text for the file.

Arrange Mail Functions

From → **Create Message Window** page 4-4
Arrange Window page 4-5

Other Decorations

[Arrange]

■ Changing a Font Color

Arrange Window *Font Color* → ● → Select a color → ● → Enter text

■ Blinking/Scrolling/Swinging a Text

Arrange Window *Blink, Telop* or *Swing* → ● → Enter text

■ Aligning a Text

Arrange Window *LineUp* → ● → Select a character position → ● → Enter text

■ Inserting a Line in Text

Arrange Window *Partition* → ●

■ Inserting Sounds

Arrange Window *Sound* → ● → *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → ● → Select a sound → ●

■ Inserting My Pictograms

Arrange Window *MyPictograms* → ● → Select a pictogram → ●

■ Deleting Decorations Individually from Text


Arrange Window *Cancel* → ● → *Delete by Each* → ● → Select the decoration to delete → ● → 

■ Deleting All Decorations

Arrange Window *Cancel* → ● → *Delete All* → ● → *YES* → ●


Change the Decorations

[Change/Delete Arrange Settings]

Create Message Window Select text → ● → Enter text →  → *Start* → ● → Select the end → ● → *Arrange* → ● → Set/delete decoration

Insert a Mail Template

[Switch Templates]

Create Message Window Select text →  → *Switch Templ.* → ● → *Switch* → ● → *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → ● → Select a template → ● → Edit text → ●

Save Templates

[Save Template]

Create Message Window Select text →  → *Save Template* → ● → Edit a title → ● → *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → ●

- Templates can only be saved when the text has been decorated with Arrange settings.

Outgoing Message Functions

Save without Sending

[Save to Drafts]

Create Message Window  → *To Drafts* → ● → *Save* → ●

Check the Content Before Sending a Message

[Preview]

Create Message Window  or  → *Preview* → ●

Specify the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server

[Expiry Time]

Create Message Window *Options* → ● → *Expiry* → ● → Select an expiry time → ●

Check Delivery of a Message

[Delivery Check]

Create Message Window *Options* → ● → *DeliveryCheck* → ● → *ON* → ●

Specify a Time Before Delivering a Message to Recipients

[Delivery Time]

Create Message Window *Options* → ● → *Delivery Time* → ● → Select a delivery time → ●

- This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Set Message Priority Before Sending [Priority]

Create Message Window **Options** → ● → **Priority**

→ ● → Select the priority → ●

- This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Activate the Reply to Function Before Sending [Reply to]

Create Message Window **Options** → ● → **Reply to**

→ ● → **Activate** → ●

- Save a Reply address in advance (page 13-15).
- This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Delete a Sent Message Checked on the Recipient's Side Automatically [Self-delete]

Create Message Window **Options** → ● →

Self-delete → ● → **ON** → ●

- This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Incoming Messages

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Complete S! Mail [Retrieve Mail]

Select S! Mail notification → ● → **Retrieve Mail** → ●

Forward the Continuation of S! Mail [Forward Mail]

Select S! Mail notification →  → **Divert** → ● → **Server Mail** → ● → **Keep** or **Do not Keep** → ● → Enter an address → 

- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Server Operations

Use the Mail List [Update Mail List/Retrieve Mail]

 → **Server Mail** → ●

■ Retrieving and Updating the Mail List

 → **Update** → ●

■ Retrieving Messages

Select a message →  → **Retrieve** → ● → **One, Select Multi** or **All** → ●

■ Retrieving Multiple Messages at Once

 → **Retrieve** → ● → **Select Multi** → ● → Select messages → ● → 

Forward Server Messages [Forward Server Mail]

 → **Server Mail** → ● → Select a message →  → **Divert** → ● → **Keep** or **Do not Keep** → ● → Enter an address → 






- When **Do not Keep** is selected, the forwarded message is deleted from the server.
- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Delete Server Messages

[Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

 → **Server Mail** → 

■ Deleting One Message

Select a message →  → **Delete** →  → **One** →  → **Server Mail** or **Notif./Server** →  → **YES** → 

■ Deleting Multiple Messages

 → **Delete** →  → **Select Multi** →  → **Server Mail** or **Notif./Server** →  → Select messages →  →  → **YES** → 


■ Deleting All Messages

 → **Delete** →  → **All Read Mail** or **All** →  → **Server Mail** or **Notif./Server** →  → Enter your Handset Code → **YES** → 

Check Server Status

[Mailbox Volume]

 → **Server Mail** →  →  → **Mailbox Vol.** → 

- To update the amount of server space, press  (Update).
- If the server usage exceeds 80%, a warning window appears. Retrieve messages stored on the server (page 4-16) or delete them.

Organizing/Using Messages

From → **Message Box Window** page 4-10
Message List Window page 4-10

Organizing Messages


Set Security for Message Box

[Security Lock]

 → **Message Box** →  → **Security Lock** →

 → Enter your Handset Code → **Lock** → 

- To check the content of messages, do the following.

 → **Message Box** →  → Enter your Handset Code → Select a folder →  → Select a message → 

Set Security for Folders



[Security Lock]

- You can set the handset so that it asks for entering your Handset Code in order to view the messages in the selected folder. However, folder security cannot be set to **General** folder.

Message Box Window Select a folder →  → **Security Lock** →  → Enter your Handset Code → **Lock** → 

Edit a Folder Name

[Rename Folder]

Message Box Window Select a folder →  → **Rename Folder** →  → Enter a folder name → 

Protect Messages

[Protect/Select Multi/Protect All]





■ Protecting One Message

Message List Window Select a message →  → **Protect** →  → **One** →  → **Protect** → 

■ Protecting Multiple Messages

Message List Window  → **Protect** →  → **Select Multi** →  → **Protect** →  → Select messages →  → 

■ Protecting All Messages

Message List Window  → **Protect** →  → **All** →  → **Protect** →  (twice)

Delete Messages [Delete/Select Multi/All in Folder/Delete All]




■Deleting One Message

Message List Window Select a message →  →

Delete →  → One →  → YES → 

■Deleting Multiple Messages


Message List Window  → Delete →  → Select

Multi →  → Select messages →  → 

YES → 

■Deleting All Messages in a Folder

Message Box Window  → Delete →  → All in

Folder →  → Enter your Handset Code → YES

→ 

■Deleting All Received/Sent Messages

Message Box Window  → Delete →  → All →

 → Enter your Handset Code → YES → 

Using Messages

Forward Messages [Forward Mail]

- When forwarding an S! Mail, the subject to which **Fw:** is prefixed is automatically inserted in the subject field.

Message List Window Select a message →  →

Divert → 

Call Sender/Recipient [Call Sender/Call Address]

Message List Window Select a message →  →

Call Sender or Call Address → 


Check Delivery Report [Check Delivery Report]

Message List Window Select a message that has the

delivery check icon  → 

Use Linked Information [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Start Navi Appli/Access URL]

Message List Window Open a message that has a

link → Select a link → 

- The available linked information is displayed in blue characters.

■Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Voice Call →  → 

■Making a Video Call to the Selected Phone Number

Voice Call →  →  → Video Call → 

■Making an S! Circle Talk Call to the Selected Phone Number

Voice Call →  →  → Circle Talk → 



■Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/E-mail Address

Create Mail →  → Create →  → The Create Message Window opens

■Adding the Selected Phone Number/E-mail Address to Phone Book

Save Sender →  → Add New or Add → 

→ The Phone Book Entry Window opens

- See "Creating New Entries" (page 2-16) for entering other items.

■Starting the Navi Appli from Location Information

Navi Appli →  → Launch → 

■Saving the Selected Location Information to the My Locations

To Locations → 

■ Connecting to the Selected URL

By *Yahoo! Keitai* or *By PC Browser* → ●

Save Attached Files

[Save Attachments]

Message List Window Open a message → →
Text Copy → ● → Move cursor to one end of
 the text range to copy → ● → Specify the range
 → ●

● Some files cannot be saved depending on the
 file type.

- To display/play the attached file, open the file
 and select **View** or **Play**. Some data may not
 be displayed/played properly on your handset.
- When a received message has more than 20
 attached files, all the files after the 20th file
 are not displayed/played.

Edit and Send Unsent Messages

[Edit Unsent Messages]

→ **Unsent** → ● → Select a message → ●
 → Select an item → ● → Edit the item → ● →

→ **OK** → ●

- Press (OK) after editing the address.

Change the Order of Messages

[Sort by]

Message List Window → **Sort by** → ● → Select
 the criteria for changing order → ●

Copy Text

[Text Copy]

Message List Window Open a message → →
Text Copy → ● → Move cursor to one end of
 the text range to copy → ● → Specify the range
 → ●

Move SMS Messages to the USIM Card or Handset

[Move]

Message List Window Open a message → →
Move → ● → **To Folder, To Phone** or **To
 USIM** → ●

Check Message Details

[View Details]

Message List Window Open a message → →
View → ● → **View Details** → ●

Move Messages to Another Folder

[Move Folder]

■ Moving One Message

Message List Window Select a message → →
Move Folder → ● → **One** → ● → Select the
 destination folder → ●

■ Moving Multiple Messages

Message List Window → **Move Folder** → ●
 → **Select Multi** → ● → Select messages →
 ● → → Select the destination folder → ●

■ Moving All Messages in the Folder

Message List Window → **Move Folder** → ●
 → **All** → ● → Select the destination folder → ●

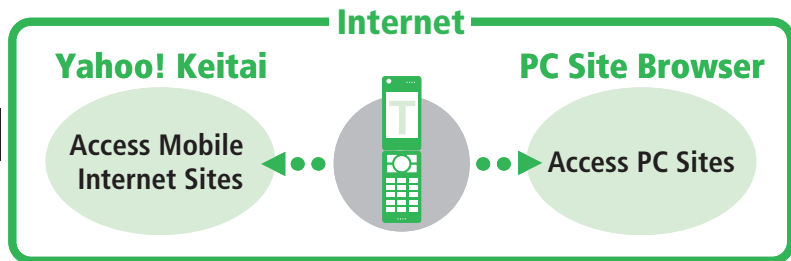
4

Messaging

Internet	5-2
About the Internet	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Accessing Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
Accessing PC Sites	5-4
Web Page Operations	5-5
Bookmarks/Saved Pages	5-6
Using Bookmarks	5-6
Using Saved Pages	5-6
Advanced Features	5-7

About the Internet

Use your handset to access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Also browse the Internet using PC Site Browser.



More Features



Security Settings (▶ page 13-19)

- Send/Block Manufacture Number
- Configure Send Referer Setting
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Configure Script Settings
- Check Root Certificates
- Set Authentication
- Set SSL Communication


• About Security

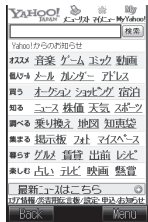
This handset uses SSL/TLS (a protocol for sending encrypted data) to protect against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. Root certificates necessary for SSL/TLS are saved on the handset.

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.
- SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that transfers of large files may result in high transmission fees.

Accessing Yahoo! Keitai

1 Press 

- To disconnect during communication, press  (Cancel).



Web Page

2 Select an item \rightarrow 

3 To stop viewing the web page, press




Accessing a Web Page from History



1 Press and hold  \rightarrow History \rightarrow 



History Window

2 Select a title \rightarrow 

Accessing a Web Page by Entering the Address

1 Press and hold  \rightarrow Enter URL \rightarrow 



URL Window


2 Select *Direct Entry* \rightarrow  \rightarrow Enter a URL \rightarrow  (twice)

More Features



Connecting/Browsing ( page 5-7)



Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser ( page 13-20)

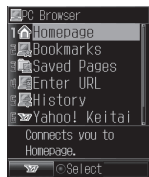
- Delete Cache Memory
- Delete All Cookies
- Clear Authentication Info
- Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Saved Pages to Default
- Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default

Yahoo! Keitai Settings ( page 13-20)

- Set the Storage Location for Downloaded Contents

Accessing PC Sites

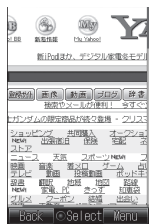
- 1 Press and hold  ()



PC Browser Menu

- 2 Select **Homepage** \rightarrow  \rightarrow **Always Ask or Ask Once Only** \rightarrow 

- If you select **Ask Once Only**, the confirmation window about display and transmission fees will not be displayed from the next time.



Web Page

Accessing a Web Page from History


- 1 From PC Browser Menu, select **History**

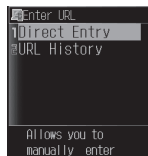


History Window




- 2 Select a title \rightarrow  \rightarrow **Always Ask or Ask Once Only** \rightarrow 

Accessing a Web Page by Entering the URL

- 1 From PC Browser Menu, select **Enter URL** \rightarrow 





URL Window

- 2 Select **Direct Entry** \rightarrow  \rightarrow **Enter a URL** \rightarrow  (twice) \rightarrow **Always Ask or Ask Once Only** \rightarrow 


- Some websites may not be displayed correctly or it may take time to open the site depending on the site.

More Features



- Connecting/Browsing PC Site Browser ( page 5-7)
- ( page 5-7)



- Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser ( page 13-20)

- Delete Cache Memory
- Delete All Cookies
- Clear Authentication Info
- Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Saved Pages to Default
- Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default

- PC Site Browser Settings ( page 13-20)

- Do Not Display a Warning Window When Switching Browsers

Web Page Operations

Scrolling Pages

When the whole page is not displayed on the browser screen, the scroll bar appears on the right or bottom of the screen. View the remaining part using / to scroll the screen. When viewing PC sites in Viewer position, press +HOLD to scroll the screen up and down, and / to scroll right and left.

Moving Cursor

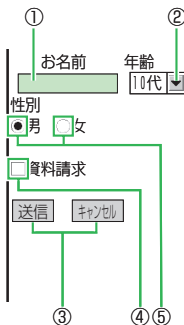
To select items, use / to move cursor. When viewing PC sites in Viewer position, press +HOLD to move cursor up and down, and / to move right and left.

Returning to Previous Page/Next Page

Websites you have retrieved are temporarily stored. Press (Back) to return to the previous page. If you press and select **Forward**, it takes you to the next page.

Text Entry & Item Selection

When there are entry fields and selectable items on the screen, operate as follows.



① Text Entry Field

You can enter text directly. Select and press . The text entry window opens. Enter text and press .

② Menu List

Select and press to display the menu list. Select an item and press .

③ Command Button

Select operations such as sending or canceling what you put in the entry fields. Select and press to execute the indicated command.

what you put in the entry fields. Select and press to execute the indicated command.

④ Checkbox

Select and press . The checkbox changes to , indicating that the item is selected.

⑤ Radio Button

Select one of a range of items. Select and press . The radio button changes to , indicating that the item is selected.

- One on the left is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

More Features



Using Web Pages

(▶ page 5-7)



Web Page Settings

(▶ page 13-21)

- Change the Font Size
- Change the Scroll Unit
- Change the Text Encoding Type
- Adjust Sound Playback Volume
- Do Not Download Images and Melodies from Web Pages
- Set Security Lock


Using Bookmarks





If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

Saving a Bookmark

1 Display a page →  → **Bookmarks** → 

2 Select **Save** → 

- If you don't edit the title or URL, press  (Save).

3 Press  (**Edit**) → Select the title field →  →  → **Edit the title** → 



4 Press  (**OK**) → 

- Select a folder when adding the bookmark to one of the folders you created.

Opening Bookmarks

1 Press and hold  → **Bookmarks** → 

- To access a web page from a PC site bookmark:

Press and hold  →  () →

Bookmarks → 



Bookmarks List Window

2 Select the title of a page → 

Using Saved Pages

If you save frequently accessed information (pages) to Saved Pages, the information can be viewed without accessing the Internet later.

Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages

1 Display a page →  → **Saved Pages** → 

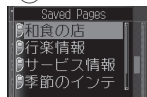
2 Select **Save** →  → Enter a title → 

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- If you save a page with the same URL as a page already saved in Saved Pages, it is saved as a different page.


Viewing Saved Pages

1 Press and hold  → **Saved Pages** → 

- To view saved pages of PC sites: Press and hold  →  () → **Saved Pages** → 



Saved Pages List Window

2 Select the title of a saved page → 

More Features



Bookmarks and Saved Pages

(▶ page 5-9)



Internet

From → **History Window** page 5-3, 5-4
URL Window page 5-3, 5-4
Web Page page 5-3, 5-4

Connecting/Browsing

Delete URL History

[Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■ Deleting One Entry

History Window → **Y** → **Delete** → **One** → **YES**

■ Deleting Multiple Entries

History Window → **Y** → **Delete** → **Select Multi** → Select recorded titles → **YES**

■ Deleting All Entries

History Window → **Y** → **Delete** → **All** → Enter your Handset Code → **YES**

Use URL History

[URL History]

URL Window → **URL History** → Select a URL → (twice)

Switch Browser

Web Page → **Y** → **Change View** → **Current Page** or **Linked Page** → **Always Ask** or **Ask Once Only**

- If you select **Ask Once Only**, the confirmation window will not be displayed from the next time.

PC Site Browser

From → **Web Page** page 5-4

Switch the Screen

[PC Screen/Small Screen]

Web Page → **Y** → **Tool** → **PC Screen** or **Small Screen**

Enlarge/Reduce a Page

[Zoom]

Web Page → **Y** → **Tool** → **Zoom** → Select magnification/shrinkage percentage

View Pages in Landscape or Portrait

[Landscape/Portrait]

Web Page → **Y** → **Tool** → **Landscape** or **Portrait**

- When the handset is in Viewer position, Portrait View is unavailable.

Using Web Pages

Refresh

[Reload Page]

Web Page → **Y** → **Reload Page**

Copy Text

[Text Copy]

Web Page → **Y** → **Text Copy** → Move cursor to one end of the text range to copy

Specify the range

- Only characters and pictographs can be copied.

Send URL Link via Mail

[Send URL]

Web Page → **Y** → **Tool** → **Send URL**

Search Text in Web Pages

[Page Search]

Web Page → **Y** → **Tool** → **Page Search** →




Enter text → Select a search method

→ **Up** or **Down**, or **ON** or **OFF**



Use Files

[File Playback/Save File/File Details]

Display a page that has a file →  → **Saving Mode** →  → Select a file → 

Opening Files

Play/View → 

- Some files may not be played/displayed properly on your handset.

Download

Save →  → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** →  → Select a folder → 

- Some files may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

File Properties

File Details → 

Use Files from Links in Web Pages

[File Playback/Save File/File Details/ Set Ringtone/Set Wallpaper]

Display a page that has a file → Select a link → 

Playing or Displaying the File

Play/View → 

- Some files may not be played/displayed properly on your handset.

Saving the File

Save → 

- Some files may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

Displaying the File Properties

File Details → 

Saving and Setting the File as Ringtone

Set Ringtone →  → **Ring Song · Tone** or **Music** →  → Select a type of incoming event →  (twice)

Saving and Setting the File as Wallpaper

Set Wallpaper →  (twice)

- Flash® or Animation wallpaper is disabled when Active Window is on. Select **Notify Only Once** to prevent warning message from appearing again.

Use Text Strings in Web Pages

[Use Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL]

- Available only when the phone number, e-mail address or URL is underlined.

Making a Call/Adding to Phone Book

Web Page  Select a link →  → **Call** or **To Phone Book** → 

Sending a Message/Adding to Phone Book

Web Page  Select a link →  → **As Mail** or **To Phone Book** → 

Accessing a Website

Web Page  Select a link → 

Save a Page to Event

[To Event]

Web Page  → **Tool** →  → **To Event** →  → Save the event (page 9-4)

Save a Page to My Locations

[To Locations]

Web Page  → **Tool** →  → **To Locations** →  → Save the location information (page 9-32)

View Page Properties

[Page Details]

Web Page  → **Tool** →  → **Details** →  → **Page Details** → 

View the Server Certificate for the Web Page

[Session Info.]

Web Page  → **Tool** →  → **Details** →  → **Session Info.** → 

Jump to the Top or End of the Web Page [Jump]

Web Page → → → →

Search for a Page by Entering a Keyword [Web Search]

Web Page → → → (twice)

Display a Selected Frame in the Whole Screen [Frame In]

Web Page Select a frame → →

■ Returning to the All-Frames Screen

→ →

Bookmarks and Saved Pages

From page 5-6
 page 5-6

Delete Bookmarks and Saved Pages [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■ Deleting One Entry

/
Select a title → → →

■ Deleting Multiple Entries

/
 → → →
Select titles → →

■ Deleting All Entries

/
 → → → → →

Change Titles [Edit Title]

■ Changing a Bookmark Title

Select a bookmark → → → →

■ Changing the Title of a Saved Page

Select a saved page → →

Create a Folder to Organize Bookmarks [Create Folder]

→ →

Move Bookmarks to a Specified Folder [Move]

■ Moving One Bookmark

Select a bookmark → → →

■ Moving Multiple Bookmarks

→ → → → →

■ Moving All Bookmarks

→ → →

Send a Bookmark via Mail [As Mail]

Select a bookmark →

5

Internet

TV	6-2
About TV	6-2
Watching TV	6-3
Configuring Channel Settings	6-3
Watching TV	6-4
Recording/Playing Programs	6-6
Recording a Program	6-6
Playing a Recorded Program	6-6
View/Record Timer	6-7
Setting the View/Record Timer	6-7
Advanced Features	6-8

About TV

This handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones and information terminals. For more information on One Seg services, visit the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

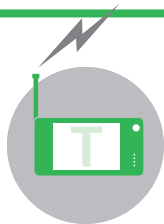
<http://www.dpa.or.jp> (PC)

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (Mobile Site) (Japanese)

- Digital TV supports reception in Japan only. Other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, and so Digital TV reception is not possible outside of Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band to allow you to watch TV and data broadcasts you enjoy at home on your handset.



**Enjoy watching TV in
widescreen.**

Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts along with watching your favorite program. You can access related information and even participate in the program.

Recording Programs

Record a program to the handset or memory card while you watch it and enjoy later.

View/Record Timer

Use the timer to view or record programs. Using the Program Guide makes timer setting even easier.

Precautions

- Never use the Digital TV while riding a bicycle or motorcycle, or while driving a car. Doing so can make it difficult to hear sounds around you, or the image or audio can distract you and create the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you when using the Digital TV. Be especially careful in the vicinity of railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- Digital TV images and/or audio can be affected if mail is received while you are using the Digital TV.
- Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data stored or settings configured by you due to an accident, malfunction, or repair of handset. Also note that Digital TV information (data recorded from the Digital TV, TV links, etc.) saved on the handset cannot be transferred to another handset when replacing the current handset, including changing to another model and repair.
- You will not be able to watch Digital TV broadcasts if your handset does not have a USIM Card installed or if your contract with SoftBank expires.
- Channels allocated by Set Channels settings are based on information available as of December 2007. Whenever there is a change in the regional broadcasting channels, use **Scan** to update the channel settings.

Configuring Channel Settings

Because the channels that can be received depend on your location, the first thing you should do before using the TV is to configure its reception channel settings.

1 Press and hold



2 Select *Manual*



- To automatically configure channel settings:
Select *Scan* 

3 Select the area Select the prefecture



- For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select *Hokkaido* for the area, select the city.

• Broadcast Signals



Image/audio quality may be poor in the following areas due to inadequate signal reception.

- Areas far away from or extremely close to the broadcast source
- Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
- Inside of a moving train or car, underground, in a tunnel, etc.
- Near high-tension electrical wires, neon lighting, wireless stations, railway lines, highways, etc.
- Other areas where there is a large number of signal obstructions, or areas that are cut off from the signal

• About the TV Antenna

- Extend the TV Antenna when using the Digital TV.
- The TV Antenna is only for receiving television signals. You should leave it stowed in the handset whenever you are not watching the Digital TV.
- Never try to adjust the angle or apply excessive force by holding the tip of the TV Antenna. Doing so can cause the TV Antenna to bend.
- When using the TV Antenna, extend it as far as it will go. Note, however, that the best image and audio reception may be possible with the TV Antenna stowed inside the handset if you are very close to the source of the broadcast.

• Battery Level

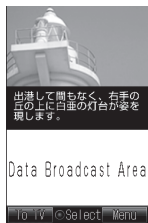
Use of the Digital TV is not possible when the battery level is at , except during charging. The Digital TV will turn off automatically if the battery level drops to  while you are using it.

• About Charging

- You can use the Digital TV while charging the battery.
- Watching or recording Digital TV while charging can cause longer charging time or unfinished charging.
- Locating the AC Charger (sold separately) cord too close to the TV Antenna while charging can cause interference with the Digital TV image.

Watching TV








1 Press and hold



TV Screen

- Digital TV is displayed in full screen view when started from Viewer position (page 6-5).











2 Select channels using the keypad

- Select channel 10 by pressing , channel 11 by , and channel 12 by .
- Direct channel selection cannot be used when keypad operations are used by the data broadcaster while viewing in Data Broadcast Mode.
- To change channels one by one, press  or  or /HOLD. To automatically search for receivable channels, press and hold /.

3 To end Digital TV, press → YES →

- Do not remove the battery while the Digital TV is in operation. Doing so can cause the **Set Channels** settings, broadcast memory, TV links, and other data to become corrupted or deleted.

Keys for Using Digital TV

Adjust Volume	 /  *1 or  /  TV
Toggle View Screens	 or 
Display Channel Information	 (press and hold)*2
Subtitles On/Off	 (press and hold)*2
End TV	 *3 / 

*1 Moves cursor in Data Broadcast Mode.

*2 Not available during full screen display of a data broadcast.







*3 You cannot end TV in Data Broadcast Mode.

Using the Data Broadcast Mode

Digital TV starts up in Data Broadcast Mode. In the Data Broadcast area you can access a variety of information relating to the program.



Data Broadcast Mode

- In the Data Broadcast area, press / to move cursor and scroll the page.
- Press and hold  while in Data Broadcast Mode to display a data broadcast in full screen. To return to the previous view, press and hold  again.
- Press  (To TV) to switch to Image Mode. Press  (ToData) again in Image Mode to return to Data Broadcast Mode.

- Receiving data broadcasts does not incur transmission fees. However, you will be charged if you utilize a service that uses the Internet.
- Data broadcasts cannot be displayed in Landscape View.

Image Mode View Screens

Press or to switch view screens.

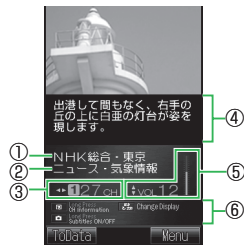
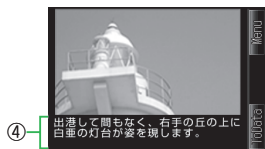
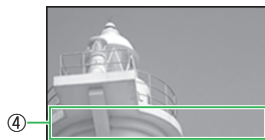


Image Mode in Portrait View



Landscape View



Full Screen View

- ① Station Name ② Program Title
- ③ Channel Number ④ Subtitle Area
- ⑤ Volume ⑥ Key Guide

Using the Program Guide

The Electronic Program Guide (EPG) S! Appli lets you select a program and activate the Digital TV.

- 1** Press → → → **Program Guide**
→

The program guide appears. For details about the procedure, see the program guide help.

More Features



Functions for Area and Channel Settings
(▶ page 6-8)

Functions While Watching TV
(▶ page 6-8)

Functions for Data Broadcast
(▶ page 6-8)



Settings for Watching TV (▶ page 13-28)

- Channel List Name
- Auto-off Timer

Image and Sound (▶ page 13-28)

- Set TV Screen Brightness
- Set TV Image Quality
- Set TV Image Sharpness
- Set Economy Mode
- Set Subtitles
- Select the Audio Output While Watching TV

Data Broadcast (▶ page 13-29)

- Set Data Communication Confirmation Window
- Set Secure Connection Confirmation Window
- Set Memory Access Confirmation Window
- Delete Broadcast Data
- Set Location Information Send Setting
- Set Whether or Not to Send the Manufacture Number
- Set the Content Storage Location

6

7

Recording a Program

You can record a program as you watch it. In addition to images and audio, you also can record subtitles and data broadcast information.

1 Press and hold \square TV \Rightarrow Display the program to record

- For information about selecting the channel, see page 6-4.

2 Press \square Y \Rightarrow Record \Rightarrow \odot

Program recording starts.

3 Press \odot / \square D \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \odot

Recording stops and the recorded program is saved to the storage location specified by **File Storage**.

- Except for your own personal enjoyment, any use of recordings made by you that infringes upon the copyrights of copyright holders is prohibited.
- Due to copyright restrictions, you may not be able to record certain programs.

Playing a Recorded Program

1 Press \odot \Rightarrow TV \Rightarrow \odot \Rightarrow TV Player \Rightarrow \odot \Rightarrow Phone Memory or Memory Card \Rightarrow \odot



Recorded Program List Window

2 Select the program to play \Rightarrow \odot



Program Playback Window

- You also can play a recorded program by the following operation.

Press \odot \Rightarrow Data Folder \Rightarrow \odot \Rightarrow TV \Rightarrow \odot \Rightarrow Select the program to play \Rightarrow \odot

Keys Used While Playing/Paused

Fast Forward	\odot \Rightarrow *1, \square HOLD *1 OR \square \Rightarrow *2
Rewind	\odot \Rightarrow *1, \square \Rightarrow *1 OR \square HOLD *2
Frame Advance	\odot \Rightarrow *3, \square HOLD *3 OR \square \Rightarrow *4
Frame Back	\odot \Rightarrow *3, \square \Rightarrow *3 OR \square HOLD *4
Pause/Play	\odot OR \square
Adjust Volume	\odot / \odot *5 OR \square \Rightarrow / \square TV

*1 Available while playing in Portrait View

*2 Available while playing in Landscape View in Clamshell Open/Viewer position

*3 Available when playback is paused in Portrait View

*4 Available when playback is paused in Landscape View in Clamshell Open/Viewer position

*5 Moves cursor in Data Broadcast Mode.

More Features



Functions for Recording and Playback

(\blacktriangleright page 6-9)

Functions for Recorded Programs

(\blacktriangleright page 6-9)



Settings for Recording Programs

(\blacktriangleright page 13-30)

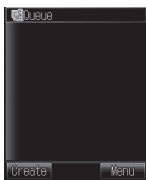
- Set the Storage Location for Recorded Programs

Setting the View/Record Timer

- Configure the channel settings in advance (page 6-3).

1 Press **TV** → **Timer**

- The first time you use the timer, a warning appears regarding the TV timer. Press **OK**. If you select **NO** in the confirmation window, the warning will not be displayed from the next time.

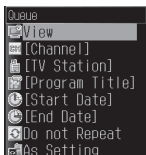


Timer List Window

2 Press **(Create)** → **Manual**



3 Select **View or Record**



4 Select **Channel** → **Channel List**

→ **Select a station**

- Select **Direct Input** to directly input a channel number.

5 Select **Start Date** → **Enter a start date and time**

→ **Select End Date**

→ **Enter an end date and time**



6 Select **Do not Repeat** → **Select a repeat method** → **Enter a repeat duration**

If you have selected **View** in **3**, skip to **8**.

7 Select **As Setting** → **As Setting, Phone Memory or Memory Card**

- Select **As Setting** to save the recorded program to the location specified by **File Storage**.

8 Press **(OK)**

When the View/Record Time is Near

Five minutes before the View/Record Timer is activated, a window appears*, an alarm sounds, and the handset vibrates.

*The actual notification window may look different from the following.



- When the handset is closed, timer notification appears on the External Display.

- View/Record Timer cannot be activated in the following situations.
 - If the handset power is turned off
 - In Card Reader ModeAlso, turn off any other functions before the view/record time.

6

TV

More Features



Functions for View/Record Timer

(▶ page 6-9)



Settings for View/Record Timer

(▶ page 13-30)

- Set the Alarm Volume for Timer Notification
- Set the Vibration for Timer Notification

TV

From **TV Screen** page 6-4

Data Broadcast Mode page 6-4

Recorded Program List Window page 6-6

Program Playback Window page 6-6

Timer List Window page 6-7

Functions for Area and Channel Settings

Add a Reception Area

[Add Channel List]

- For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select **Hokkaido** for the area, select a city.

■ Configuring Channel Settings Automatically

Switch Reception Areas

[Switch Channel Lists]

Functions While Watching TV

Select a Channel from the Channel List

[Select Station]

Check the Keys for Use While Watching TV

[Key Guide]

Capture a Picture

[Capture]

Display the program

- Except for your own personal enjoyment, any use of captured pictures that infringes upon the copyrights of copyright holders is prohibited.
- Due to copyright restrictions, you may not be able to capture pictures of certain programs.

Use a Wireless Earphone

[Output Settings]

- For information about pairing a wireless device, see page 12-5 and the user manual of the wireless device.

Functions for Data Broadcast

Save or Check TV Links

[Save/Check TV Links]

■ Saving a TV Link

Select items such as **Save TV Links**

- The actual procedure depends on the program. For details, see the information within the data broadcast.

■ Displaying a Website from a TV Link

- To display a Memo, do the following.
- The following icons appear to indicate the TV link type.

TV Links	Valid	Expired
Memo		
Link communication contents		
Mobile contents		
PC contents		

- For some TV links, an Internet connection confirmation window will appear. If you select **Ask Once Only**, the confirmation window will not be displayed from the next time.

Functions for Recording and Playback

Check the Keys for Use During Playback [Key Guide]

Program Playback Window → *Key Guide* →

Functions for Recorded Programs

Edit a File Name

[Rename]

Recorded Program List Window Select a file →

Rename → → Edit the file name →

- You cannot edit files saved to a memory card.

Delete Files

[Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■ Deleting One File

Recorded Program List Window Select a file →

Delete → → *One* → → *YES* →

■ Deleting Multiple Files

Recorded Program List Window → *Delete* →

Select Multi → → Select files → →

YES →

■ Deleting All Files

Recorded Program List Window → *Delete* →

All → → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* →

Functions for View/Record Timer

Use Program Information to Set View/Record Timer

[Set Timer by Program Guide]

Timer List Window → *Program Guide* →

S! Appli starts → Select a program → Set the View/Record Timer

Check/Edit/Delete Timer Information

[Check/Edit/Delete Timer Information]

■ Checking Timer Information

Timer List Window Select an entry →

■ Editing Timer Information

Timer List Window Select an entry → →

Select an item → → Edit the item →

■ Deleting a Timer Entry

Timer List Window Select an entry → → *Delete*

→ → *YES* →

- When the timer is set to repeat, a confirmation window appears.

Check/Delete Timer Results [Check/Delete Timer Results]

■ Checking a Timer Result

→ *TV* → → *Timer Results* → → Select an entry →

■ Deleting a Timer Result

→ *TV* → → *Timer Results* → → Select an entry → → *Delete* → → *YES* →

View Available Memory on the Handset and Memory Card

[Remaining Time]

Timer List Window → *Remaining* →

- Press to switch between available memory on the handset and memory card.
- The remaining time displayed serves as a guide only. The actual time you can record depends on the program.

Camera	7-2
Basics	7-2
Taking Pictures	7-3
Camera Modes	7-3
Taking a Picture	7-3
Recording Videos	7-5
Video Modes	7-5
Recording a Video	7-5
Camera Functions	7-7
Delay Timer	7-7
Frame Setting (Still Picture)	7-7
Multi Shots (Still Picture)	7-7
Picture Editing	7-8
Basic Operations for Picture Editing	7-8
Changing the Size	7-9
Picture Effects	7-9
Compounding Pictures	7-9
Advanced Features	7-10

Basics

Use the camera to take pictures and record videos.

- Operations are described in Clamshell Open position unless otherwise noted.

Image Sizes

Select from a variety of sizes, from handy-size pictures or videos perfect for Sha-mail or Movie Sha-mail to high resolution images, to fit your needs.

Shooting Modes

Use the delay timer, take pictures with frames or other effects, or take continuous shots.

Auto Focus

When you press the shutter key, the camera automatically detects the distance to the subject and focuses. Image stabilization function is also included.

Picture Editing

Compose and edit images by adding stamps or text to pictures you have taken.

- Pictures are saved in JPEG format, and videos in MPEG-4 format.
- To avoid camera shake, hold the handset firmly, or set the image stabilizer function (page 13-26) to **ON**.
- Fingerprints or grime may affect focus. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth.
- Do not block the lens or brightness sensor with your finger or strap when shooting pictures/videos.

Display Positions

Use the display position suited for each Camera mode or Video mode. See page 1-4 for changing the display position.

Clamshell Open Position

Use this position when shooting in Mobile, Video Mail or Short Video mode.

Viewer Position

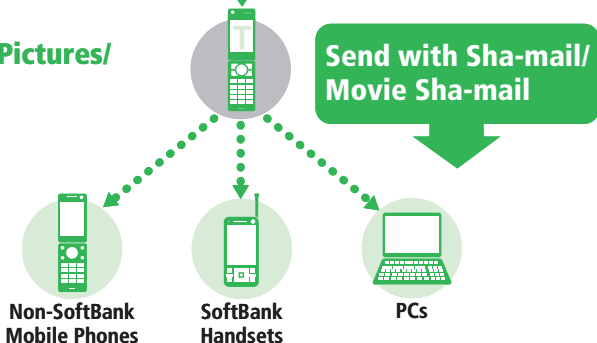
Use this position when shooting in Digital or Video mode.

Self-portrait Position

Use this position for Self-view mode. Shoot either in portrait or landscape orientation according to the Camera/Video mode to be used.

Shoot Pictures/ Videos

Send with Sha-mail/ Movie Sha-mail



Taking Pictures

Camera Modes

■ Mobile

Take a picture to set as wallpaper, etc.

■ Digital

Take a high-quality picture to display on an external device such as PC.

Taking a Picture

1 Press **Camera** \Rightarrow **Mobile** or **Digital** \Rightarrow **OK**

- Press **OK** in Standby to display the viewfinder of the last Camera mode you used.



Viewfinder

2 Frame subject in Display \Rightarrow **OK** / **Shutter**

Autofocus adjustment occurs prior to taking a picture (focus frame appears). The shutter clicks, and the preview window appears.



Preview Window

- To delete the picture you have taken:
Press **DELETE** \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow **OK**

3 Press **OK** / **Shutter**

If Storage is set to **Phone Memory**, the picture is saved to **Pictures** in Data Folder, and the viewfinder reappears. If it is set to **Memory Card**, a picture taken in **Mobile** mode is saved to **Pictures**, one taken in **Digital** mode to **Digital Camera**, and the viewfinder reappears.

- Capturing images in low-lighting may compromise image quality. Capture images in adequate lighting or use Mobile Light.

Keys for Use with Viewfinder

Toggle Camera Modes	
Zoom Adjustment	*1 Or *2
Exposure Adjustment	*1
Mobile Light On/Off	
Self-view On/Off	
Icons Display On/Off	
Key Guide On/Off	

*1 Functions assigned to are different in Landscape View (page 2-3).

*2 Also available in Viewer position.

More Features



Functions for Taking Pictures

(▶ page 7-10)

Common Functions After Shooting

Pictures/Videos

(▶ page 7-11)



Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos

(▶ page 13-25)

- Save Pictures/Videos Automatically
- Change Storage Location
- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- Adjust Color Control
- Set Picture/Video Effects
- Adjust Flicker
- Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos
- Set the File Name

Settings for Taking Pictures

(▶ page 13-26)

- Set Focus Mode
- Use Image Stabilization
- Change the Shutter Sound
- Add Date Stamp
- Set Picture Guidelines
- Take a Picture for Phone Book Entry

Video Modes

■ Video

Record long videos.

■ Video Mail

Shoot videos to send as attachments.

■ Short Video

Shoot MPEG-4 videos and send to MPEG-4 compatible SoftBank handsets (PDC).

Recording a Video

Recorded videos are automatically saved to the **Videos** folder in handset or a memory card.

1 Press **OK** → **Camera** → **OK** → **Video, Video Mail or Short Video** → **OK**

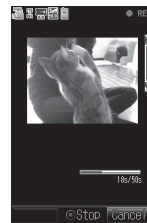
- Press and hold **REC** in Standby to display the video viewfinder of the last Video mode you used.



Video Viewfinder

2 Frame subject in Display → **OK** / **REC**

The start sound is heard and recording begins.



- In **Video** mode, press **ESC** (Pause) to pause, then **REC** (Record) to resume recording.

3 Press /

End tone sounds, and the first frame of the recording appears.



Preview Window

- To delete the video you have recorded in **Video Mail** or **Short Video** mode:
Press **YES**
- Videos recorded in **Video** mode are automatically saved. To delete the recording:
Press **Delete** **YES**

4 Press /

Files are saved in the location specified in **Storage** and the video viewfinder reappears.

Keys for Use with Video Viewfinder

Toggle Video Modes	
Zoom Adjustment	/ *1 or / *2
Exposure Adjustment	/ *1
Mobile Light On/Off	
Self-view On/Off	
Icons Display On/Off	
Key Guide On/Off	

*1 Functions assigned to are different in Landscape View (page 2-3).

*2 Also available in Viewer position.

More Features



Functions for Recording Videos

(▶ page 7-11)

Common Functions After Shooting Pictures/Videos

(▶ page 7-11)



Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos

(▶ page 13-25)



- Save Pictures/Videos Automatically
- Change Storage Location
- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- Adjust Color Control
- Set Picture/Video Effects
- Adjust Flicker
- Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos
- Set the File Name

Settings for Recording Videos

(▶ page 13-27)

- Do Not Record Sound
- Enlarge the Video Viewfinder
- Change the Start/End Sound
- Set the Preview Display
- Set the Recorded Video as a Ringtone Pattern


Delay Timer

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after / is pressed and a specified time elapses.

- 1 Activate the Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder   *Picture* or *Movie* 




- 2 Select *Delay Timer* 




- 3 Select seconds 

- Zoom is unavailable when the delay timer is activated.

Frame Setting (Still Picture)

- 1 Activate the Viewfinder   *Add Frame* 

- 2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* 
 - To cancel the frame, select *OFF*.

- 3 Select *Pictures* 

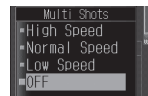
- 4 Select a frame  (twice)


- When the Camera mode is set to *Digital*, you cannot use Add Frame.

Multi Shots (Still Picture)

Take nine pictures in succession.

- 1 Activate the Viewfinder   *Multi Shots* 



- 2 Select a speed 

- When the Camera mode is set to *Digital*, you cannot use Multi Shots.
- Picture Modes are not available when using Multi Shots.

Picture Editing

Images that have been captured and stored in Data Folder or memory card can be edited. The following types of files can be edited: JPEG files of 2 Mbytes or less, PNG files of 1 Mbyte or less.

Images that are larger than W240×H400 (W400×H240) are reduced to W240×H400. A picture that is smaller than W16×H16 cannot be edited.

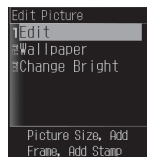
- If **Overwrite** is performed, the file cannot be restored to the original. To leave the original file, select **Save as New**.
- If Data Folder is full, delete unnecessary files from Data Folder before editing a picture.

7

Basic Operations for Picture Editing

1 Press **Tools** → **Useful Tools** →

Edit Picture →



2 Select **Edit** → **Phone Memory** or

Memory Card → **Pictures** or

Digital Camera → **Select a picture**

→

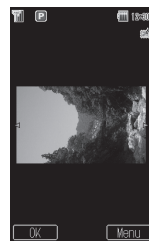


Picture Editing Window

3 Press **Y**



4 Select the edit type → **Perform edit operations**



5 Press **OK** → **Overwrite** or **Save as New** →

Changing the Size

- 1 In the Picture Editing Window, press

⇒ **Picture Size** ⇒



- 2 Select a picture size ⇒

- After selecting the size, you can use to adjust the position of the picture to clip.
- To adjust the width or height:
Press (Resize) ⇒ **Fit to Width** or **Fit to Length** ⇒
- To rotate the picture:
Press (Rotate) ⇒ **Rotate Image** ⇒

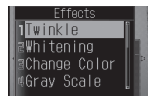
- 3 Press (**Cut**) ⇒

Editing is complete.

Picture Effects

- 1 In the Picture Editing Window, press

⇒ **Effects** ⇒



- 2 Select an effect ⇒

- Press / to change the effect level in **Twinkle**, **Whitening**, **Change Color**, **Shade Off**, **Pinch**, and **Brush Up**.

- 3 Press

Editing is complete.

Compounding Pictures

Compound two pictures.

- 1 In the Picture Editing Window, press

⇒ **Overlay** ⇒

- 2 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card**

⇒ ⇒ **Pictures** ⇒ ⇒ Select a picture

⇒

- Press / to adjust the translucency rate.

- 3 Press

Editing is complete.

More Features



Additional Picture Editing Functions

(▶ page 7-11)

Camera

From → **Viewfinder** page 7-3

Preview Window page 7-3, 7-6

Video Viewfinder page 7-5

Functions for Taking Pictures





Quickly Focus on Subjects Nearby

[Macro]

Viewfinder  → **Function** →  → **Focus Mode** →  → **Macro** → 

Shoot Scenery without Autofocus

[Infinity]





Viewfinder  → **Function** →  → **Focus Mode** →  → **Infinity** → 

Shoot with the Focus Locked



[Auto Focus Lock]

- The focus mode setting (page 13-26) must be **Auto** in order to use Auto Focus Lock.

Viewfinder  Frame subject in Display → Half press



 /  → Re-compose the image →  /  →

 / 

- The focus frame turns from white to green when focus was successful and it turns red when focus has failed.
- After focusing on the subject, half press  /  again to re-focus the subject.

Change the Size of Pictures to Take

[Picture Size]




Viewfinder  → **Picture Size** →  → Select a picture size → 

- For details on picture sizes, see page 14-14.

Select a Picture Mode That Suits the Type of Picture You Want to Take

[Picture Mode]

- **Bright**: Emphasizes beautiful white skin tones.
- **Redness**: Take pictures with healthy skin tones.
- **Night**: Suitable for taking night scene pictures.
- **Sensitive**: Suitable for taking bright pictures in dark locations.
- **Character**: Suitable for taking character pictures.

Viewfinder  → **Picture Mode** →  → Select a Picture Mode → 

- Picture Mode cannot be set while using Multi Shots (page 7-7).
- If image stabilization (page 13-26) is set to **ON**, the setting is disabled while Picture Mode is active. Picture Mode returns to **OFF** when the camera ends and image stabilization setting returns.

Take Pictures with Beautiful Skin Tones

[Brush Up Mode]

Viewfinder  → **Brush Up** →  → **ON** → 


- When the Camera mode is set to **Digital** and Picture Size is set to **W2048×H1536** or **W2048×H1232**, you cannot use Brush Up Mode.

Functions for Recording Videos

Change the Format of Videos

[Encode]

Video Viewfinder  → **Movie** →  → **Encode** →

 → **MPEG4** or **H.263** → 

- The format of videos can only be changed while in **Video Mail** mode.

Common Functions After Shooting Pictures/Videos



View a Picture/Video in Data Folder

[View Picture/Video]

Viewfinder / Video Viewfinder  → **Data Folder**

or **My Videos** →  → Select a picture or video →



- To use the full screen, press  (Full) while viewing the picture.
- To display the key guide, press  while playing a video.

Send a Picture/Video via Mail

[As Mail]

- If Auto Save (page 13-25) is set to **OFF**, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.
- Videos recorded in **Video** mode cannot be sent.

Preview Window 

- For details on creating S! Mail messages, see page 4-4.

Send a Picture/Video to Another Handset

[Via Infrared/Via Bluetooth®]

- If Auto Save (page 13-25) is set to **OFF**, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.
- Videos recorded in **Video** mode cannot be sent.

Preview Window  → **Send via** →  → **Via**

Infrared or **Via Bluetooth** → 

- For sending by infrared communication, see page 12-2. For sending by Bluetooth® communication, see page 12-6.

Additional Picture Editing Functions

From → **Picture Editing Window** page 7-8

Add Text to a Picture

[Add Text]

Picture Editing Window  → **Add Text** →  →

Select a font size →  → Enter text →  →  to adjust the position →  →  → **Overwrite** or **Save as New** → 

■ Changing the Font Color

While selecting a position,  →  → 

■ Changing the Frame Color

While selecting a position,  →  → 

Add a Frame to a Picture

[Add Frame]

Picture Editing Window  → **Add Frame** →  →

Phone Memory or **Memory Card** → 

Select a frame →  →  to adjust the position →  →  → **Overwrite** or **Save as New** → 

Add a Stamp to a Picture

[Add Stamp]

Picture Editing Window → **Add Stamp** → →
Phone Memory or **Memory Card** → →
 Select a stamp → → to adjust the position
 → → (twice) → **Overwrite** or **Save as
 New** →

- If the size of a stamp is larger than that of the picture, the stamp cannot be added.

Rotate a Picture

[Rotate Image]

Picture Editing Window → **Rotate Image** →
 → → → → →
Overwrite or **Save as New** →

Apply a Mosaic to Part of a Picture

[Mosaic]

Picture Editing Window → **Mosaic** → →
 to adjust the position → → to change the
 texture → → → **Overwrite** or **Save as
 New** →

Mix Pictures to Create Wallpaper

[Wallpaper]

→ **Tools** → → **Useful Tools** → → **Edit
 Picture** → → **Wallpaper** → → Select [1] →
 → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** →
 → Select a picture → → to compose the
 image → → Select [2] to [4] and repeat the
 operations → → **Phone Memory** or
Memory Card →

- To unset a picture, press (Delete).

Brighten Dark Areas of a Picture

[Change Bright]

→ **Tools** → → **Useful Tools** → → **Edit
 Picture** → → **Change Bright** → →
Phone Memory or **Memory Card** → →
 Select a picture → → to adjust the
 brightness → → **Overwrite** or **Save as New**
 →

- A picture cannot be saved if its brightness is set to 0 %.



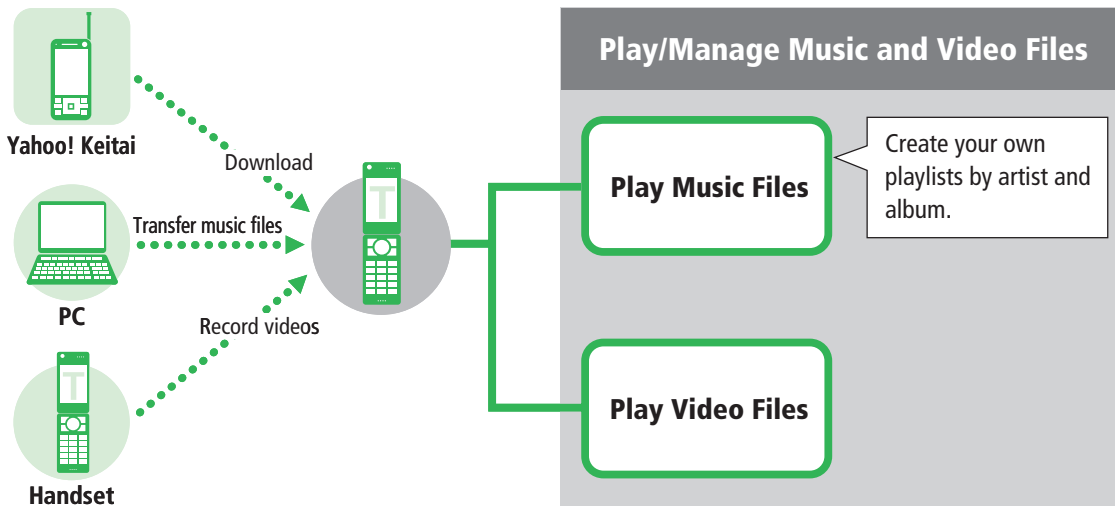
Playing Music and Videos	8-2
About Music/Video Playback	8-2
Obtaining Music and Videos	8-3
Playing Music	8-4
Playing Music with Music Player	8-5
Playing Videos	8-5
Playlists	8-7
Using Playlists	8-7
S! Appli	8-8
Using S! Appli	8-8
Downloading S! Appli	8-8
Starting S! Appli	8-8
Advanced Features	8-10

Playing Music and Videos

About Music/Video Playback

Music and videos stored on the handset are played and managed with Media Player.

- Access Web pages to get music/video files.
- See page 14-14 for a list of file types that can be played with Media Player.
- Use the Earphone-Microphone and a wireless device to play music files with Media Player via a wireless connection.



- Media Player cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery to use Media Player.

Obtaining Music and Videos

Download music and video files from Yahoo! Keitai, etc.

- You can connect your handset to your PC with the USB cable and transfer music files to your handset. For details on transferring music files, see page 12-8.

- 1 Press **Media Player**



- 2 Select **Audio** or **Videos**

- 3 Select **Download Music** or **Download Videos**

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

Streaming

Access Web pages for streaming music/video files.

- Packet transmission fees apply even if playback is paused because the handset continues network communication.

- 1 Press **Media Player**

- 2 Select **Streaming**
- Enter **URL**
- Enter a **URL**

Streaming from Bookmarked Pages

Access the bookmarked Web pages for streaming.

- 1 Press **Media Player**

- 2 Select **Streaming**
- Select **Bookmarks**

- 3 Select a **Bookmark**

Streaming from Recent URLs

- 1 Press **Media Player**

- 2 Select **Streaming**
- Select **Recent**

- 3 Select a **title**

Streaming from Links in Messages and Web Pages

Stream content by selecting a link.

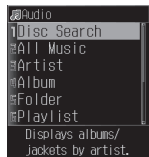
- 1 Select a link in **S! Mail/SMS** or **By Yahoo! Keitai** or **By PC Browser**

- To stream data from the Internet: Select a link
- Operations may vary depending on the website.

Playing Music

- When you close the handset while playing music with Media Player, Music Player is displayed on the External Display.

1 Press



Audio Menu Window



2 Select **All Music**



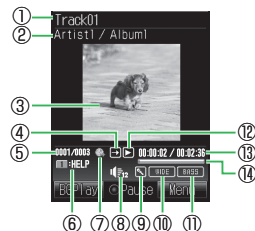
All Music List Window

- Select **Disc Search** to display all music files by artist and album.
- Select **Artist**, **Album** or **Folder** to display music files by artist, album or folder, respectively.












3 Select a music file

- If a music file includes a jacket photo, the jacket photo appears when the file is selected in the list window. Press  during playback to switch the jacket photo.
- To end Media Player, press .







Music File Playback Window



Music File Playback Window

- ① Title
- ② Artist Name/Album Name
- ③ Playback Image
- ④ Play Mode
 -  All
 -  Repeat All
 -  Current Only
 -  Repeat
 -  Random
- ⑤ File Number/Total Number of Files
- ⑥ Help Guidance
- ⑦ Web Link
- ⑧ Playback Volume
- ⑨ Voice Cancel
- ⑩ Surround
- ⑪ Equalizer
- ⑫ Playback Status
 -  Play
 -  Pause
 -  Buffering
 -  Fast Forward
 -  Rewind
 -  Stop
- ⑬ Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
- ⑭ Progress Bar

Operations While Playing/Paused



Return to the Beginning of a File/ Skip to Previous File	
Skip to Next File	
Fast Forward	Press and hold 
Rewind	Press and hold 
Adjust Volume	
Key Guide	

Playing Music with Music Player

If you close the handset while playing music with Media Player, Music Player will be activated automatically to continue playback.

Activating Music Player

- 1 Close the handset while playing music files with Media Player

- When battery level is low, Music Player won't launch.
- Press /  to adjust the volume while Music Player is playing.

Music Player Playback Window

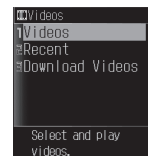


Music Player Playback Window

- 1 Play mode
- 2 Playback status
- 3 Title, artist name and album name run in a ticker from right to left.

Playing Videos

- 1 Press  → *Media Player* →  → *Videos* → 




Video Menu Window

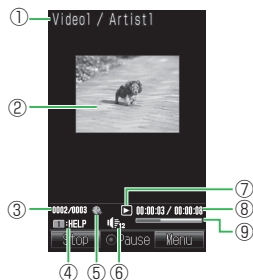
- 2 Select *Videos* →  → *Phone Memory or Memory Card* → 



Video List Window

- 3 Select a video file → 

Video File Playback Window



Video File Playback Window

- ① File Name/Artist Name
- ② Video
- ③ File Number/Total Number of Files
- ④ Help Guidance
- ⑤ Web Link
- ⑥ Playback Volume
- ⑦ Playback Status
 - ▶ Play
 - ⏸ Pause
 - ⏹ Buffering
 - Stop
 - ⏩ Fast Forward
 - ⏪ Rewind
 - ⏴ Slow Playback
- ⑧ Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
- ⑨ Progress Bar

Operations While Playing/Paused

Skip to Previous File	⏮ while playing/⏮ [X] [M]
Skip to Next File	⏭ while playing/⏭ [H] [M]
Fast Forward	Press and hold ⏩ while playing
Rewind	Press and hold ⏪ while playing
Frame Back	⏮ while paused
Frame Advance	⏭ while paused
Slow Playback	Press and hold ⏴ while paused
Adjust Volume	🔊
Key Guide	[I] [M]

More Features



- Functions for Music/Video Playback (▶ page 8-10)
- Playback Features (Music) (▶ page 8-10)
- Playback Features (Video) (▶ page 8-10)
- Functions for Music/Video Files (▶ page 8-10)



- Settings for Playing Music (▶ page 13-31)

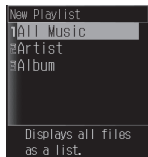
- Set Audio Output
- Set the Wallpaper Displayed During Playback

Using Playlists

Using playlists, you will be able to create a list of your favorite songs and play them as a set. Add music files to playlists by all tracks at once, by artist, or by album.

Adding Songs to a Playlist

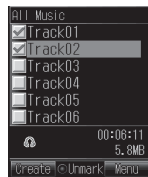
- 1 Press → **Playlist** →
- 2 Press → **New Playlist** → → **Phone Memory or Memory Card** →
- 3 Enter a playlist name → → **YES** →



Playlist Creation Window

- 4 Select **All Music** →
 - To select music files by artist or by album: Select **Artist** or **Album** → → Select an artist or album →

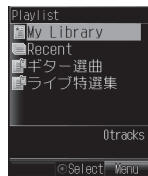
- 5 Select a music file →
 - To select multiple files, repeat this step.



- 6 Press (Create)

Playing a Playlist

- 1 Press → **Playlist** →



Playlist Window

- 2 Select a playlist → (Play)

Changing the Name of a Playlist

- 1 Press → **Playlist** →
- 2 Select a playlist → → **Rename** →
- 3 Edit the playlist name →

More Features



Functions for Playlists (▶ page 8-11)

Using S! Appli

Download an S! Appli from Web pages providing S! Appli on the Internet. Downloading incurs the same amount of transmission fees as when you use the Internet.

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).
- You can download and use only S! Appli that are specially designed for SoftBank handsets.

Downloading S! Appli

- 1 Press **☉** → **S! Appli** → **☉** → **Library** → **☉**



S! Appli Library

- 2 Select **More S! Appli** → **☉** → **YES** → **☉** → **Select an S! Appli** → **Download** → **☉**

- 3 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → **☉**

Downloading begins.

- A confirmation window appears when the download is completed.

- If battery level is low, the application may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace the USIM Card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

Starting S! Appli

- 1 Press **☉** → **S! Appli** → **☉** → **Library** → **☉**

- To change the Library view from the handset to the memory card, press **☉** (☉) (☉).

- 2 Select an **S! Appli** → **☉**

- When you use a Network S! Appli, a transmission fee is charged each time the application connects to the network.
- When using a Network S! Appli while **Access** under Security is set to **Blanket**, the handset is automatically connected to the network without displaying the alert.

Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli

- 1 While an S! Appli is running, press **POWER** (POWER)
- 2 Select **Pause**, **Resume** or **End** → **☉**

Resuming/Ending Suspended S! Appli

1 Press  → **S! Appli** →  → **Library**
→ 

2 Select **Resume or Exit** → 

- Since the earpiece and speaker are close to each other, loud sound from the speaker may directly enter your ear at audio playback, which may adversely affect your hearing. Be careful about the handset position towards your ear so that loud sound does not directly enter your ear.

More Features



S! Appli (▶ page 8-12)



**Settings for Operations While Running S!
Appli** (▶ page 13-32)

- Change Sound Effect Volume
- Set Brightness of Illumination
- Set Blinking of Illumination
- Set Vibration
- Set Priority While Running S! Appli

Other S! Appli Settings (▶ page 13-32)

- Set Confirmation Window for Making Calls or Network Connection
- Update S! Appli Information on the Memory Card
- View S! Appli License Information
- Confirm S! Appli Root Certificates

Media Player

From → **All Music List Window** page 8-4

Music File Playback Window page 8-4

Video Menu Window page 8-5

Video List Window page 8-5

Video File Playback Window page 8-6

Playlist Window page 8-7

Functions for Music/Video Playback

Specify a Point to Start Playback

[Search Time]

Music File Playback Window / **Video File Playback Window**

While a file is playing/paused →  → **Search**

Time → ● → Enter the start position (time) → ●

Access Recently Played Files

[Recent]

Playlist Window / **Video Menu Window** **Recent** → ●

→ Select a file → ●

Playback Features (Music)

Replay the Last Played Song

[Play Last Song]

Press and hold 

Play Songs in Random Order

[Random Play]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused →  → **Play Mode** → ● → **Random** → ●


Repeat

[Repeat Play]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused →  → **Play Mode** → ● → **Repeat** or **Repeat All** → ●

Change Sound Quality

[Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused →  → **Surround**, **Equalizer** or **Voice Cancel** → ● → Select a sound effect, **ON** or **OFF** → ●

Run Media Player in Background

[Multitask]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused → 

Playback Features (Video)

Window Size

[Normal Screen/Full Screen]


Video File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused →  → **Normal Screen** or **Full Screen** → ●

Functions for Music/Video Files

Sort Music/Video Files

[Sort by]


■ Music Files

All Music List Window Select a file →  → **Sort by** → ● → Select the sort criteria → ●

■ Video Files

Video List Window Select a file →  → **Change View** → ● → **Sort by** → ● → Select the sort criteria → ●

Send Music/Video Files to Another Handset [Send File]

● → **Data Folder** → ● → **Ring Song•Tone, Music** or **Videos** → ● → Select a music or video file →  → **Send** → ● → Select the transmission method → ●

- For sending by infrared communication, see page 12-2. For sending by Bluetooth® communication, see page 12-6.

View Music/Video File Properties [Details]

All Music List Window / **Video List Window** Select a file →  → **Details** → ●

Functions for Playlists

From → **Music File Playback Window** page 8-4
Playlist Window page 8-7


Add a Song Being Played to a Playlist [To Playlist]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused →  → **To Playlist** → ● → Select a playlist → ●

Add a Song Being Played to My Library [To My Library]


Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused → Press and hold 

Add Songs to a Playlist [Add Tracks]


Playlist Window Select a playlist → ● →  → **Add Tracks** → ● → **All Music** → ● → Select a music file → ● → 


- To select music files by artist or album, select **Artist** or **Album** and select an artist or album, respectively.

Change the Playing Order of a Playlist [Change Order]


Playlist Window Select a playlist → ● → Select a file →  → Select a location → ●

Delete a Song from a Playlist [Remove Tracks]


Playlist Window Select a playlist → ● →  → **Remove Tracks** → ● → **One** → ● → **YES** → ●

- To delete multiple music files, select **Select Multi**, select files you want to delete, and press .
- If you delete all files on a playlist, the playlist will be deleted, too.

Copy a Playlist [Copy Playlist]

Playlist Window Select a playlist →  → **Copy** → ● → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → ●

Delete a Playlist [Delete Playlist]

Playlist Window Select a playlist →  → **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ●

S! Appli

From → [S! Appli Library](#) page 8-8

Set an S! Appli as Screensaver

[S! Appli Screensaver Settings]

⊙ → S! Appli → ⊙ → Settings → ⊙ →
Screensaver → ⊙

■ Selecting an S! Appli

Screensavers → ⊙ → Select an S! Appli → ⊙
→ YES → ⊙

■ Setting the S! Appli Start Time

⌚ → Start Time → ⊙ → Enter the time until
start → ⊙

- Even if there is an incoming call, Answering Machine will not operate when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver or when the **Voice Call** of Calls&Alarms (page 13-32) is set as **Continue Apps**.
- According to the type of application, there are some cases when a Screensaver application may pause if the time specified for Power Saving (page 13-5) is over.

Move S! Appli

[Move/Select Multi/Move All]

■ Moving One Application

[S! Appli Library](#) Select an application → ⌚ →
Move → ⊙ → One → ⊙ → YES → ⊙

■ Moving Multiple Applications

[S! Appli Library](#) ⌚ → Move → ⊙ → Select Multi
→ ⊙ → Select applications → ⊙ → ⌚ → YES
→ ⊙

■ Moving All Applications

[S! Appli Library](#) ⌚ → Move → ⊙ → All → ⊙ →
Enter your Handset Code → YES → ⊙

- Screensaver settings will be canceled if the S! Appli set as Screensaver is moved to the memory card.
- There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved anywhere according to the type of the preinstalled S! Appli. There are also some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved to the memory card according to the type of S! Appli.
- If there is the same S! Appli on the handset or on the memory card, the S! Appli will be overwritten.

Delete S! Appli

[Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■ Deleting One Application

[S! Appli Library](#) Select an application → ⌚ →
Delete → ⊙ → One → ⊙ → YES → ⊙

■ Deleting Multiple Applications

[S! Appli Library](#) ⌚ → Delete → ⊙ → Select
Multi → ⊙ → Select applications → ⊙ → ⌚ →
YES → ⊙

■ Deleting All Applications

[S! Appli Library](#) ⌚ → Delete → ⊙ → All → ⊙ →
Enter your Handset Code → YES → ⊙

- If a preinstalled S! Appli is deleted, **Reset All** does not restore the application.

View S! Appli Properties

[Details]

[S! Appli Library](#) Select an S! Appli → ⌚ → Details
→ ⊙

Tools	9-2
About Tools	9-2
Calendar/Tasks	9-4
Saving Events	9-4
Time Table	9-7
Creating a Time Table	9-7
Notepad	9-8
Using Notepad	9-8
Voice Recorder	9-9
Osaifu-Keitai®	9-10
About Osaifu-Keitai®	9-10
Using Osaifu-Keitai®	9-10
Disabling Osaifu-Keitai®	9-12
Disabling Osaifu-Keitai® from a Remote Location	9-12
S! GPS Navi	9-14
Using S! GPS Navi	9-14
Idokoro Mail	9-16
Using Idokoro Mail	9-16
Alarms	9-18
Using Alarms	9-18
World Clock	9-19
Calculator/Dictionary	9-20
Using the Calculator	9-20
Using the Dictionary	9-20
Kitchen Timer	9-21
Measuring Time	9-21
S! Quick News	9-22
Checking for Information Updates	9-22
S! Information Channel	9-23
Browsing Updated Information	9-23
Document Viewer	9-24
Viewing PC Files	9-24
Electronic Books	9-25
Using BookSurfing®/e-Book Viewer	9-25
Barcode Reader	9-26
Scanning QR Codes	9-26
Ku-man's Room (Japanese)	9-27
Opening Ku-man's Room	9-27
Advanced Features	9-28

About Tools

You can use the following useful functions.

Information Management Tools

Manage information on the handset.



Information Browsing Tools

View and check all kinds of information.

Calendar

View the Calendar and save events. Use information stored in the events to make calls and create messages.

Tasks

Save tasks with time limit. Set the alarm for deadline, or organize tasks to check based on whether they are Completed, Not Completed or Overdue.

Time Table

Create a time table and check your class schedule.

S! Quick News

Check various pieces of information delivered at a regular interval and S! Loop items from Active Window.

Notepad

Save notes. You can access saved notes while entering text. This is especially useful if often-used phrases and memos are saved.

Voice Recorder

Record and play back sounds. The recordings can be sent via mail and set as ringtone.

S! Information Channel

Automatically download subscribed information. Use Weather Indicator that posts weather forecast in Standby.

Document Viewer

View PDF, Microsoft® Office Word, Excel, and Power Point® documents.

Electronic Books

Use BookSurfing® and e-Book Viewer to view electronic books, comics, and albums.

Lifestyle Support Tools

These tools support everyday life.



Other Tools

Barcode Reader

Scan QR codes with the camera, and view and use scanned information.

Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

Visit Ku-man's Room to change his outfit or receive messages from him.

Osaifu-Keitai®

Hold this IC device up to a reader at a store to pay with electronic money. Also use it as a ticket for public transportation or as a point card.

S! GPS Navi

Uses positioning information to show your location on a map or the best route to your destination.

Idokoro Mail

Sends messages to inform others when you have entered or left a specific area.

Alarms

An alarm sounds at a specified time. You can set the alarm to sound only on a specific day of the week and set the snooze function.

World Clock

View dates and times of cities around the world. Display the date and time of the city (or country) where you live and of another city in Standby.

Calculator

Includes a wide array of useful functions, such as basic arithmetic operations, percentages, and memory. You can also calculate currency conversions.

Dictionary

The handset includes three useful dictionaries: Japanese, English-Japanese, and Japanese-English.

Kitchen Timer

Set an alarm to sound after a specific time expires.

Saving Events

Opening Calendar

- 1 Press and hold



Calendar Window

- " = ", the start time, event title and/or stamp icon are displayed on the date that an event is saved.
- Press or to switch between the previous and next window.

- 2 Press to select a calendar view format

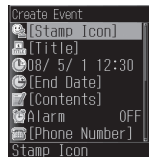
- You can switch the calendar view between Monthly View, Monthly & Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View and All View.

Jumping to the Specified Date

- 1 In the Calendar Window, press \Rightarrow *Jump* \Rightarrow
- 2 Enter a date \Rightarrow

Saving an Event

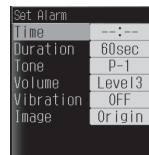
- 1 From Calendar Window, select the date to save an event \Rightarrow (Create)



Create Event Window

- 2 Select *Title* \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter a title \Rightarrow
- 3 Select the start date and time field \Rightarrow \Rightarrow *Date&Time* or *Date Only* \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter a date and time \Rightarrow
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
 - Enter only the date, when you select *Date Only*.
- 4 Select *End Date* \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter a date and time \Rightarrow
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
 - If *Date Only* has been selected for the start date and time, this field cannot be entered.
- 5 Select *Contents* \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter details of the event \Rightarrow

- 6 Select *Alarm* \Rightarrow \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow



Event Alarm Setting Window

- 7 Select *Time* \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter a date and time \Rightarrow \Rightarrow (OK)

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

- 8 Press (OK) \Rightarrow OK \Rightarrow

- If you select *Notify Only Once* when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

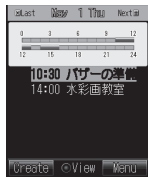
The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

- 1 Press any key while the alarm is sounding

- To view the event details, press (View) after stopping the alarm.

Checking an Event

- 1 From Calendar Window, select the date to check → ●



Daily View Window

- 2 Select an event → ●

- From All View Window, select an event and press ● to display the Event Details Window.



Event Details Window

Deleting an Event

- 1 From Daily View Window, select the event to delete

- 2 Press Δ → Delete → ●

- 3 Select One → ● → YES → ●

- To delete all events for the day:
Select *For this Day* → ● → YES → ●

Deleting All Previous Events

- 1 From Calendar Window, select the next day of the event to delete

- 2 Press Δ → Delete → ● → *Before Today* → ● → YES → ●

Saving Tasks

- 1 Press ● → Tools → ● → Tasks → ●

- 2 Press Δ → Create New → ●



New Task Window

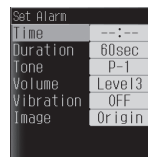
- 3 Select *Title* → ● → Enter a title → ●

- 4 Select *Deadline* → ● → Enter a date and time → ●

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

- 5 Select *Contents* → ● → Enter details of the task → ●

- 6 Select *Alarm* → ● → ON → ●



Task Alarm Setting Window

- 7 Select *Time* → ● → Enter a date and time → ● → Δ (OK)

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

- 8 Press Δ (OK) → OK → ●

- If you select *Notify Only Once* when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

1 Press any key while the alarm is sounding

- To view the task details, press (View) after stopping the alarm.

Checking Tasks

1 Press → **Tools** → → **Tasks** →



Tasks Window

- To change the view format: Press → **Change View** → → Select a view format →
- To change the status of a task: Select a task → (Status) → Select the status →

Deleting a Task

1 From Tasks Window, select the task to delete

2 Press → **Delete** → → **One** → → **YES** →

More Features



Functions for Calendar (▶ page 9-28)

Functions for Saving Events/Tasks (▶ page 9-28)

Functions for Saving Events (▶ page 9-29)

Functions for Saving Tasks (▶ page 9-29)

Functions for Checking/Managing Events (▶ page 9-29)

Functions for Checking/Managing Tasks (▶ page 9-30)



Settings for Saving Events (▶ page 13-38)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set the Image to Display at the Set Time
- Set the Stamp Icon
- Set Category of the Event
- Set a Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL

- Set a Link to a Related Message/Web Page/Image
- Set a Location

Settings for Calendar (▶ page 13-39)

- Set the View Format When Opening Calendar
- Change the Font Color of Events
- Lock Calendar

Settings for Saving Tasks (▶ page 13-39)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set the Image to Display at the Set Time
- Set the Stamp Icon
- Set Task Priority
- Set the Task Status

Settings for Tasks (▶ page 13-40)

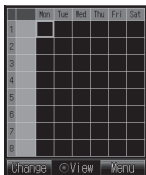
- Lock Tasks

Creating a Time Table

A time table from Monday to Saturday can be created.

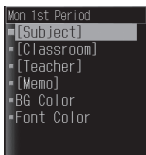
Subjects and classrooms of up to eight periods per day, and font colors can be entered/specified.

- 1 Press → **Tools** → → **Useful Tools** → → **Time Table** →



Time Table Window

- 2 Select a period → → **Edit** →



- 3 Select **Subject** → → Enter a subject →
 - To enter a classroom, teacher or memo: Select an item → → Enter information →
 - To specify the background or font color: Select **BG Color** or **Font Color** → → Select a background or font color →

- 4 Press (OK)

Checking the Time Table

- 1 From Time Table Window, select a period →

Deleting a Class from Time Table

- 1 From Time Table Window, select the period to delete
- 2 Press → **Delete** → → **One** → → **YES** →

More Features



Time Table Functions (▶ page 9-30)

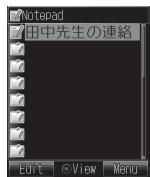


Time Table Settings (▶ page 13-40)

- Set Start/End Time of a Period
- Reset Time Settings to Default

Using Notepad

- 1 Press → **Tools** → → **Notepad** →



Notepad List Window

- 2 Select a blank notepad →
- 3 Enter contents →

Setting Category

- 1 From Notepad List Window, select the notepad to set an icon for → → **Set Category** →
- 2 Select a category →
The icon of the selected category is displayed.

Viewing Notepad

- 1 From Notepad List Window, select a notepad →

Deleting a Notepad

- 1 From Notepad List Window, select a notepad
- 2 Press → **Delete** → → **One** → → **YES** →

More Features



Notepad Functions (▶ page 9-30)

Voice Recorder

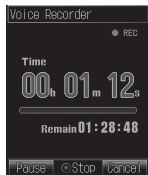
- Use the Voice Recorder exercising common morals and manners.
- Note that recording of some concerts and shows is not allowed even for personal use.
- If the handset receives a call while you are recording, the recording stops and is automatically saved in order to give priority to the call. If you don't want to receive calls while you are recording, set the handset to Offline Mode.

- 1** Press → **Tools** → → **Useful Tools** → → **Voice Recorder** →



Voice Recorder Window

- 2** Select **Record** → (twice)



Voice Recorder Recording Window

- You record through a microphone (mouthpiece).
- Press (Pause) to pause recording. To resume recording, press . To save the recording data, press (Save).
- When the remaining time available for recording is less than 10 seconds, ● REC flashes.

- 3** Press Sounds recorded with Voice Recorder are automatically saved in the **Ring Song•Tone** folder.

Playing Recordings


- 1** From Voice Recorder Window, select **Recordings** →
- 2** Select **Phone Memory or Memory Card** →
- 3** Select a file →
 - Use during playback to adjust the volume.

More Features



Voice Recorder Functions (▶ page 9-31)

About Osaifu-Keitai®

Osaifu-Keitai® is a service used by mobile phones with built-in contactless IC card (FeliCa chip) technology. The mark  on the back of the handset can be held up to a reader/writer for such tasks as shopping with e-money, using a member's card or a point card. Osaifu-Keitai® can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used while the battery is removed.

- For more information about Osaifu-Keitai®, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Getting Started

■ IC card

The term "IC card" means an IC chip built in an Osaifu-Keitai® compatible terminal.

■ Lifestyle-Appli

This is an S! Appli for using Osaifu-Keitai®.

- Your handset comes with a preinstalled e-money Lifestyle-Appli called "Edy". "Edy" is the brand name of a prepaid e-money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Precautions

- The data on the IC card can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any losses suffered by you if this happens.
- Before deciding whether to use an Osaifu-Keitai® service, be sure to contact the service provider about the terms, conditions, and other rules governing its use.
- Transmission fees may be incurred when downloading a Lifestyle-Appli or when using a Lifestyle-Appli that requires network connection.
- Do not remove the stickers from the back of the battery cover or from the handset in the area around the battery, and do not remove the battery cover. Doing so may make it impossible to use Osaifu-Keitai®.
- Certain types of service and usage conditions may cause data to be stored on the IC card. The procedure for deleting such data from the IC card depends on the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the Osaifu-Keitai® service provider.
- Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data or settings on the IC card due to malfunction or repair.
- Be sure to keep separate records of the security code, contact information, and other information for each service so you do not forget them.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

1 Press  → *Data Folder* →  → *Lifestyle-Appli* → 

2 Select *Download* →  → *YES* →  → **Download a Lifestyle-Appli from the Web Page**

- Lifestyle-Appli are stored in the *Lifestyle-Appli* folder of Data Folder.

- Downloading may not end normally if battery level is low.
- A downloaded Lifestyle-Appli cannot be used if you replace the USIM Card.

Subscribing to an Osaifu-Keitai® Service and Configuring Settings

1 Press **☉** → **Tools** → **☉** → **Osaifu-Keitai** → **☉** → **Lifestyle** → **☉**

2 Select the **Lifestyle-Appli** to subscribe and set up → **☉**

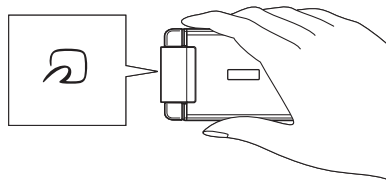
- You must subscribe to an Osaifu-Keitai® service (hereafter "service") and configure a number of settings.
- The subscription method and the settings depend on the Lifestyle-Appli. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

The e-money example below shows how to use a reader/writer to read IC card data.

- Before performing this procedure, you must subscribe to a service, configure its settings, and make a deposit in your e-money account.
- There is no need to activate Lifestyle-Appli to perform this procedure.
- Osaifu-Keitai® can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that a Lifestyle-Appli will not activate while the handset is turned off.

1 Hold the **☉** mark up to the reader/writer



- Whenever there is difficulty reading the data, try moving the handset back and forth, left and right.

2 Check the reader/writer display to confirm that the read was performed

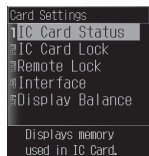
- Data may not be read if there is a metal object or other obstruction between the **☉** mark and the reader/writer.
- Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery to use Osaifu-Keitai®.

Disabling Osaifu-Keitai®

Your handset can be set to disable communication between the IC card and a reader/writer.

Turning IC Card Lock On or Off

- 1 Press **Tools** → **Osaifu-Keitai** → **Card Settings** →



Card Settings Window

- 2 Select **IC Card Lock** → Enter your Handset Code → **ON** or **OFF** →

Disabling Osaifu-Keitai® from a Remote Location

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® from a remote location by placing a call to the handset from another phone (Call Lock) or by sending an e-mail message with a preset subject to the handset (Mail Lock).

- You must set either the Lock Phone Number or Lock Password, and set either the Call Lock or Mail Lock to **ON** in advance.

Setting the Lock Phone Number

- 1 From Card Settings Window, select **Remote Lock** → Enter your Handset Code

- 2 Select **Call Lock** →



- 3 Select **Phone Numbers** →

- 4 Press **Phone Book** →

- Select **Phone Number** to enter a phone number directly.
- Select **Call Log** to select a phone number from Call Log.
- Select **Payphone** or **Withheld** to remotely lock your handset from a pay phone or a withheld number.

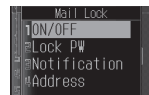
- 5 Select an entry → Select a phone number → (twice)

Setting the Lock Password

Set a password (subject) for performing Mail Lock.

- 1 From Card Settings Window, select **Remote Lock** → Enter your Handset Code

- 2 Select **Mail Lock** →



- 3 Select **Lock PW** →

- 4 Enter a lock password →

Turning Call Lock or Mail Lock On

- Note that you cannot set to **ON** unless the Lock Phone Number or Lock Password has been set in advance.

- 1 From Card Settings Window, select **Remote Lock** → → Enter your Handset Code
- 2 Select **Mail Lock** or **Call Lock** →
- 3 Select **ON/OFF** → → **ON** or **OFF** →

Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card

Using Call Lock to Lock the IC Card

- 1 Place a call to the handset from one of the preset phone numbers
- 2 Hang up the phone
 - The calls must go unanswered three times in a row within three minutes.

- The current incoming call count is cleared (becomes zero) whenever any one of the following occurs.
 - If a call is received from another preset phone number
 - If a call placed to the handset is answered
 - If the handset is turned off
 - If the number of incoming calls does not reach the preset number (default is 3) within three minutes
- If Call Lock is performed while a video call is in progress, IC Card Lock will turn on but there will be no message to tell that the IC card has been locked.
- Call Lock cannot be performed while a voice call is in progress and Call Waiting is set to **OFF**.

Using Mail Lock to Lock the IC Card

- 1 Create a message with the preset lock password as the subject, and send it to the handset
 - Do not enter anything for other fields of the message.
 - IC Card Lock will turn on when the message is received.

- If the handset is unable to receive mail for some reason, IC Card Lock will not be turned on even if you send a Mail Lock message.

Canceling Remote Lock

Set IC Card Lock to **OFF** to cancel Remote Lock.

More Features



Functions for Osaifu-Keitai®

(▶ page 9-31)



Settings for Osaifu-Keitai®

(▶ page 13-40)

- Specify Whether Functions Start Up When Handset is Held Up Before a Reader/Writer
- Check IC Card Information
- Do Not Send a Lock Engaged Notification

Using S! GPS Navi

About S! GPS Navi

S! GPS Navi uses location information by GPS satellite and by communication with base stations. View on the map where you are, and send your location information to compatible SoftBank handsets.

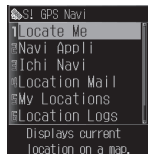
The navigation application (Navi appli) is preinstalled in your handset. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, the handset position can be determined by the base station information. However, depending on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error could vary from hundreds of meters to several kilometers in radius.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- Positioning cannot be performed by the handset while Positioning Lock is in use.

Starting the Navi Appli

Use the navigation application to retrieve information about your current location or check the route to your destination.

- 1 Press $\odot \rightarrow \text{Tools} \rightarrow \odot \rightarrow \text{S! GPS Navi} \rightarrow \odot$



S! GPS Navi Window

- 2 Select **Navi Appli** $\rightarrow \odot$

Checking Your Current Position

- 1 From S! GPS Navi Window, select **Locate Me** $\rightarrow \odot$
 - A confirmation window appears as to whether to send out the location information. If you select **Ask Once Only**, the confirmation window will not be displayed from the next time.
- When the location information send setting (**LocationProperty**) is set to **Do not Send**, the current position cannot be checked. Set to **Always Ask** or **Send**.

Using Ichi Navi

Locate other people or locate the approximate location of your own handset if you have lost it.

- 1 From S! GPS Navi Window, select **Ichi Navi** $\rightarrow \odot$
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

- To use Ichi Navi, the person requesting location information must join the service.
- Before receiving a request for location information, you need to sign up on Yahoo! Keitai the people you allow to request location information (people you inform of your location).
- Ichi Navi is not effective in areas that are out of signal range.
- You need to apply and do the settings in advance so that you can use a PC to search for a lost or stolen handset.




More Features



Functions for S! GPS Navi (► page 9-32)



Settings for S! GPS Navi (► page 13-41)

- Save a Map URL
 - Edit the Map URL Display Name
 - Edit the Map URL
 - Delete a Map URL
 - Set the Map URL
 - Select the Navi Appli
 - Lock Positioning
 - Set Location Information Send Setting
- 

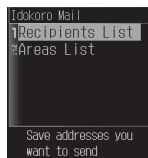
Using Idokoro Mail

Inform other people of your arrival or departure by mail notification when you leave or arrive in a specified area (Departure or Arrival Mail), and send your location information by a simple operation (Simple Notice).

- When signal reception from the GPS satellite is poor, handset position is determined by base station information. However, the margin of error may vary from a few hundred meters to several kilometers in radius, depending on the base station's location/signal strength.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- Positioning cannot be performed by the handset while Positioning Lock is in use.
- Transmission fees apply for sending Departure Mail/Arrival Mail/Simple Notice and using positioning service.

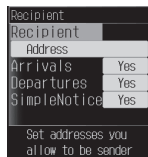
Saving People to Recipients List

- 1 Press **Tools** → **Useful Tools** → **Idokoro Mail** → **Enter your Handset Code**



Idokoro Mail Window

- 2 Select **Recipients List** → **Select a list**



Recipient Window

- 3 Select **Recipient** → **Select an entry from Phone Book** → **Select a phone number or e-mail address**
- 4 Select each mail notification → **Yes** or **No** → **(OK)**

Saving Locations to Areas List

- 1 From Idokoro Mail Window, select **Areas List**
 - If the Recipients List has no entry, a message window appears. Save addresses to the Recipients List to use Idokoro Mail.
- 2 Select an **area list**



Area Settings Window

- 3 Select **Area Name** → **Enter an area name**
- 4 Select **Set Location** → **Current** → **Start positioning**
 - To specify from Location Logs or My Locations: Select **Location Logs** or **My Locations** → **Select location information**
 - To specify from Phone Book: Select **Phone Book** → **Select a Phone Book entry that has location information**

- 5** Select *Launch Setting* → → *Select Date* → → *Date* → → *Enter a date* → → *Arrivals Time or Departures Time* → → *ON* → → *Enter the start time and duration* → → (OK)
- To specify a day of the week:
Select *Weekly* → → Select *Arrive* or *Depart* for the day you want to specify → → *ON* → → *Enter the start time and duration* → → (OK)

- 6** Press (OK)

Mail Notifications

Automatically Sending Notifications

When the specified time has been reached, your current position is obtained using GPS and it is compared with location information of the saved area. When your departure or arrival is confirmed, a mail notification is sent. When your departure or arrival cannot be confirmed during the specified time period or positioning cannot be performed because you are out of range, a mail notification is automatically sent.

Manually Sending Notifications (Simple Notice)

Send Simple Notice to preset recipients (Recipients must be set to **Yes** in Recipient Window).

- The Side Key must be set to *SimpleNotice* in advance (page 2-4).

- 1** Press and hold

More Features

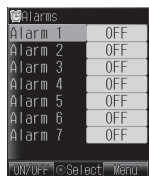


Functions for Idokoro Mail (page 9-32)

Using Alarms

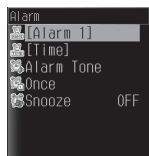
Setting an Alarm

- 1 Press → **Tools** → → **Alarms** →



Alarm List Window

- 2 Select an alarm →



Set Alarm Window

- 3 Select **Time** → → Enter a time →
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

- 4 Select **Once** → → Select a repeat interval →
 - When you select **Weekly**, do the following.
Select day(s) of the week → → (OK)
- 5 Select **Snooze** → → **ON or OFF** →
→ Enter a time between alarm tones →
- 6 Press (OK) → **OK** →
 - If you select **Notify Only Once** when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

- 1 Press any key while the alarm is sounding

When Snooze is Set

If Snooze is set to **ON**, the alarm plays in specified intervals up to five additional times.

To stop Snooze and return to Standby:

Stop the alarm → **Stop Snooze** → → **YES** →

Canceling an Alarm

- 1 From Alarm List Window, select the alarm to cancel
- 2 Press (ON/OFF)

Deleting an Alarm

- 1 From Alarm List Window, select the alarm to delete
- 2 Press → **Reset** → → **YES** →

More Features



Alarm Functions (▶ page 9-33)



Alarm Settings (▶ page 13-42)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set the Image to Display at the Set Time

World Clock

The time displayed on the handset is the time for the city you set as Main City. If you set the time for City 1 and City 2, and select **World-Digital** or **World-Analog** in the clock type setting (**Others**) (page 2-7), then the time and date of both City 1 and City 2 are displayed in Standby.

Setting World Clock

Setting City 1/City 2

- 1 Press **Tools** → **Settings** → **Phone** → **Settings** → **Clock** → **World** → **Clock**



World Clock Setting Window

- 2 Select **City 1** or **City 2** → to select a city

Switching the Main City

- 1 From World Clock Setting Window, select **Set as Main City**
- 2 Select **City 1** or **City 2**

Displaying World Clock

In the World Clock Window, you can view dates, time, and time difference by moving a cursor (yellow line) on the map. City 1 and City 2 of the World Clock settings are displayed in green and red lines respectively.

- 1 Press **Tools** → **Useful Tools** → **World Clock**



World Clock Window

- 2 Use **Left/Right** to select a city
 - To switch Daylight Saving Time (DST) on or off, press **DSTon** (DSTon) or **DSToff** (DSToff).

More Features



World Clock Functions (▶ page 9-33)



World Clock Settings (▶ page 13-42)

- Set the City by the GMT Time Difference
- Set Daylight Saving Time (DST)

Using the Calculator

- 1 Press **Tools** → **Calculator**



Calculator Window

Operations in the Calculator Window

Enter Numbers	
+	
-	
x	
÷	
=	
± (Switch +/-)	
Tax	
C (Clear)	
. (Decimal)	
EXIT	

- **Other Options by Pressing in the Calculator Window**
 Converter: Enter the currency exchange rate and then perform currency conversion calculations.
 Clear All: Delete the input value and data stored in memory.
 MS: Save the input value to memory.
 M+: Add the input value to the value stored in memory.
 MR: Display the value stored in memory.
 %: Calculate a percentage.
 1/X: Calculate a reciprocal.
 SQRT: Calculate a square root.
 Set Tax Rate: Set the tax rate to be calculated when you press . Enter the tax rate and press **.**

Using the Dictionary

You can use the Japanese, English-Japanese, or Japanese-English dictionaries.



"Jispa" of Gakken Co., Ltd. is bundled as Japanese dictionary, English-Japanese dictionary and Japanese-English dictionary.

- 1 Press **Tools** → **Dictionary**



- 2 Select *Japanese, English-Japanese or Japanese-English* → **.**
- 3 Press → **Enter a keyword** → **.**
- 4 Select a word → **.**

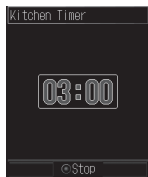
More Features



Functions for Calculator (▶ page 9-33)

Measuring Time

- 1 Press **ⓘ** → **Tools** → **ⓘ** → **Useful Tools** → **ⓘ** → **Kitchen Timer** → **ⓘ**
- 2 Enter a countdown time → **ⓘ**
- 3 Press **ⓘ** (Start)



- Press **ⓘ** (Stop) during the count to temporarily stop the timer. To restart, press **ⓘ** (Start).

After a Specified Time Elapses

The alarm sounds or the handset vibrates, and the External Light flashes.

To stop the alarm, press any of **ⓘ**, **ⓧ**, **ⓧ**, **POWER**, and **ⓧ**.

S! Quick News

Confirm various pieces of the latest news delivered by information service providers and S! Loop items from Active Window by automatic updates recurring every period of time as you have specified.

Checking for Information Updates

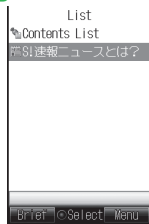
Registering Contents

- 1 Press → *Entertainment* → → *S! Quick News* →

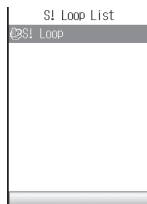


S! Quick News Window

- 2 Select *List* or *S! Loop List* →



List Window



S! Loop List Window

- 3 Select *Contents List* or *S! Loop* → → *YES* →

- 4 Select contents →
 - Follow the onscreen instructions to register contents.

Checking for Updates

- 1 Select contents from *List Window* or *S! Loop List Window* →
- 2 Select the item to check →
 - Press to check the previously updated information and to check the next updated information.

More Features



Functions for S! Quick News (▶ page 9-33)



Active Window Settings (▶ page 13-8)

- Select S! Quick News Information to Display
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Image Display
- Restore Settings and Registered Contents of S! Quick News to Default

S! Information Channel

Browsing Updated Information

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night.

- Packet transmission fees apply to use S! Information Channel.

Subscribing/Canceling Subscription

Connect your handset to a special site to register or cancel transmission information and select programs.

- Transmission fees apply while you are connected to the Web.

- 1 Press **☉** → **Entertainment** → **☉** → **Info Channel** → **☉**



Info Channel Window

- 2 Select **Reg./Cancel** → **☉** → **YES** → **☉**
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

Checking Content Updates

- 1 From Info Channel Window, select **What's new?** → **☉**

Checking the Latest Information from Information Prompt

- 1 When Information Prompt appears → **Info Channel** → **☉**

Using Weather Indicator

Weather Indicator shows the weather forecast for the current local area with icons in Standby. The displayed icons are updated automatically.

- A separate subscription is required to use Weather Indicator.

Checking Weather Forecast

- 1 From Info Channel Window, select **Weather** → **☉**



Weather Indicator Window

- 2 Select **Weather** → **☉**
 - You can view the weather forecast by selecting Weather Indicator icons and pressing **☉** from Active Window (page 2-8).

More Features



S! Information Channel (▶ page 9-34)



S! Information Channel Settings (▶ page 13-43)

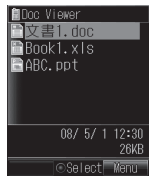
- Do Not Display Weather Indicator Icons in Standby
- Set Notification of Weather Forecast Updates

Viewing PC Files

Your handset can display Microsoft® Office Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, and PDF document files.

- Display of the following formats (extensions) is supported: Microsoft® Word (.doc), Microsoft® Excel (.xls), Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt), and PDF (pdf).

- 1 Press **Tools** → **Doc Viewer** → **Phone Memory or Memory Card**



- 2 Select a file

Operations While Files are Displayed

Scroll up, down, left, right	
Enlarge page	
Reduce page	
Display actual size	
Display entire page*	
Rotate 90 degrees right	
Go to previous page/sheet/slide	
Show bookmarks*	
Go to next page/sheet/slide	
Go to first page/sheet/slide	
Search	
Go to last page/sheet/slide	
Go to specific page/sheet/slide	

*Available only when viewing PDF files.

- Some document file contents may look different from how they appear on your PC.
- Some document files may take a long time to appear.

Using BookSurfing®/e-Book Viewer

BookSurfing® and e-Book Viewer are viewers to view electronic comic books, electronic photo albums, electronic publications (novels, etc.), and other electronic books.

You can enlarge or reduce images, scroll the window with simple operations, and use sound, vibration, and other effects to enhance your reading experience.

- Some electronic books may require a content key for viewing.

Supported File Formats

BookSurfing®	CCF (.CCF)
e-Book Viewer	X MDF (.ZBK, .ZBF, .ZBS)

- Titles of unsupported file formats are not displayed.
- The viewer that starts up depends upon the file format. To find out the file format, see Details of the file (page 2-30).
- e-Book Viewer may not be able to display some PC contents.

1 Press  → *Entertainment* → 

2 Select *BookSurfing* or *e-Book Viewer*



- For the following operations, see BookSurfing® or e-Book Viewer help.

Scanning QR Codes

About QR Codes

The camera allows you to scan QR codes and save them as QR code data. Connect to a URL included in the scanned information, create a message to send to an address included in the scanned information or save it to Phone Book.



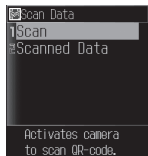
- The camera may not be able to scan a QR code that is dirty or in the dark.
- Some QR codes cannot be scanned depending on the size or version.

9

Tools

Scanning a QR Code

- 1 Press  →  →  → 




Scan Data Window

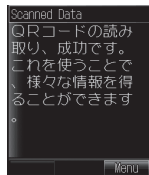
- 2 Select *Scan* → 



Scanning Window

- 3 Frame a QR code in the Display → 



- Use  to adjust the exposure.
- When the QR code has been divided into data areas, select **YES** to scan the other data areas. When all the areas are scanned, the QR code data is displayed.



Scan Results Window

- 4 Press  → *Save* → 

Checking Saved Data

- 1 From Scan Data Window, select *Scanned Data* → 
- 2 Select QR code data → 

More Features



Scanning QR Codes (▶ page 9-34)

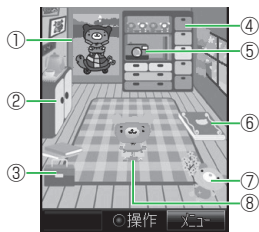
Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

Opening Ku-man's Room

- 1 Press **🟢** → **エンタテインメント (Entertainment)** → **🟢** → **くまんの部屋 (Ku-man's Room)** → **🟢**
- 2 Select **開ける (Open)** → **🟢** → **YES** or **NO** → **🟢**

• You cannot visit Ku-man's Room if the language setting is set to **English**. Set **言語選択 (Language)** to **日本語 (Japanese)**.

About Ku-man's Room



Ku-man's Room

© Dora communications

- 1 **Poster**
You can change posters.
- 2 **Change Cloths**
Contains Ku-man's clothes.
- 3 **Treasure Chest**
Contains Ku-man's treasures.
- 4 **Closet**
It is decorated with many different types of trophies.
- 5 **Take Pictures**
You can take pictures of Ku-man or yourself.
- 6 **Album**
Albums with pictures of Ku-man.
- 7 **Change!**
Standby Ku-man changes his outfit by putting on a plush toy.
- 8 **Ku-man**
Ku-man is a foot-loose and fancy free baby star bear. He sometimes goes off on journeys.

Playing with Ku-man

Look in Ku-man's Treasure Chest, change the outfit of Ku-man in Standby or take photos.

Example: Changing the outfit of Ku-man in Standby

- 1 In Ku-man's Room, press **🟢**
Now you can operate Ku-man's Room.

- 2 Press **🔍** (前へ (Previous)) / **🔍** (次へ (Next)) to select **👕👖!** (Change!) → **🟢**

- 3 Select an outfit → **🟢**
 - Ku-man in his room wears the clothes from before the change.

Checking Messages from Ku-man

Ku-man sends mail after you open his room for the first time, when he goes on trips and other times. Sometimes there are presents attached to messages from Ku-man.

- 1 In Ku-man's Room, press **📧** → **くまんのメール (Ku-man Mail)** → **🟢**
- 2 Select a message → **🟢**

More Features



Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

(▶ page 9-34)



Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese)

(▶ page 13-43)

- Set Ku-man to be Displayed in Standby

Information Management Tools

- From → **Calendar Window** page 9-4
- Create Event Window** page 9-4
- Event Alarm Setting Window** page 9-4
- Daily View Window** page 9-5
- Event Details Window** page 9-5
- New Task Window** page 9-5
- Task Alarm Setting Window** page 9-5
- Tasks Window** page 9-6

Functions for Calendar

Change the Color of Calendar Dates

[Set Holiday]

■ Changing the Color of a Specified Date

Calendar Window Select a date → **Set Holiday** → **Current Day** → Select a color or **Deactivate** →

■ Changing the Color of a Specified Day of the Week

Calendar Window **Set Holiday** → **Select Week** → Select a day of the week → Select a color →

Functions for Saving Events/Tasks

Set the Alarm Tone

[Alarm Tone]

Event Alarm Setting Window / **Task Alarm Setting Window**
Tone →

■ Setting a Sound Preinstalled in the Handset as the Alarm Tone

Patterns or **Melodies** → Select an alarm tone → (twice) → **OK** →

■ Setting a File Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Phone Memory or **Memory Card** → Select a file → (twice) → (twice) → **OK** →

■ Setting the Time Reader as the Alarm Tone

Time Reading → (twice) → **OK** →

Set the Alarm Ring Time

[Duration]

Event Alarm Setting Window / **Task Alarm Setting Window**
Duration → Enter a ring time → (twice) → **OK** →

Display the Events/Tasks for Today or Tomorrow at the Specified Time

[Reminder]

Calendar Window / **Tasks Window** **Settings** → **Reminder** → **ON** → **Time** → Enter a time →

Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

■ Setting Display

Today → **Today** or **Tomorrow** →

■ Setting a File Preinstalled in the Handset as the Alarm Tone

Set Alarm → **Tone** → **Patterns** or **Melodies** → Select an alarm tone → (twice)

■ Setting a File Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Set Alarm → **Tone** → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → Select a file → (twice) → (twice)

■ Setting the Alarm Volume

Set Alarm → → **Volume** → → Adjust the volume → → (twice)

- In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual alarm volume is fixed at level 3 even if it is set higher than level 3; and the maximum volume is level 3 if the alarm volume is set to **Ascending Volume** or **Descending Volume**.

■ Setting Vibration

Set Alarm → → **Vibration** → → Select a vibration pattern → → (twice)

■ Setting the Alarm Ring Time

Set Alarm → → **Duration** → → Enter a ring time → → (twice)

■ Setting Alarm Repeats

Once → → Select an item → →

Hide Special Events/Tasks

[Hide]

Create Event Window / **New Task Window** **Options** → → **Show/Hide** → → **Hide** →

Functions for Saving Events

Save Periodic Events

[Repeat Setting]

Create Event Window **Options** → → **Repeat for** → → **Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Yearly** or **End of Month** → → Enter a repeat duration →

- If you set the start date to the last day of the month, you can set **Repeat for** to **End of Month**.
- To repeat infinitely, enter "00".
- If you set **Monthly** for the 30th or 31st, the repetition is only set for months that include that date.
- If an event set to repeat daily, weekly, etc. is deleted, a message asks if you wish to cancel repeat features. Select **Do not Repeat** to delete the event for that day only.
- Canceling a single date of a repeated event may not be effective if the event is sent as vObject (page 2-31) and received by another device.

Edit a Saved Event

[Edit Event]

Daily View Window Select an event → → **Edit** → → Select an item → → Edit the item → → → **Overwrite** or **Save as New** → → → **OK** →

Functions for Saving Tasks

Edit a Saved Task

[Edit Task]

Tasks Window Select a task → → **Edit** → → Select an item → → Edit the item → → → **Overwrite** or **Save as New** → → **OK** →

Functions for Checking/Managing Events

Use Information Stored in the Event

[Call/Create Message/Access URL]

■ Calling or Sending a Message to the Stored Phone Number

Event Details Window Select the phone number → (twice) → **Voice Call** or **Create Mail** → • When you select **Voice Call**, do the following.
 → **Voice Call** or **Video Call** →

■ Sending a Message to the Stored E-mail Address

Event Details Window Select the e-mail address →
 ● (twice)

■ Connecting to the Stored URL

Event Details Window Select the URL → ● (twice)
 → YES → ●

Use Related Information Stored in the Event [To Messages/To Saved Pages/To Pictures]

Event Details Window *To Messages, To Saved Pages* or *To Pictures* → ●

Use Information Stored in Contents [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Access URL]

Event Details Window Select the *Contents* field →
 ● → Select the information → ● → *Voice Call, Create Mail, Save Sender, By Yahoo! Keitai* or *By PC Browser* → ●

Delete Multiple Events

[Select Multi]

Calendar Window → Switch to All View → →
 → Delete → ● → Select Multi → ● → Select events → ● → → YES → ●

Delete All Events

[Delete All]

Calendar Window → Delete → ● → All → ● →
 → Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

Functions for Checking/Managing Tasks

Use Information Stored in the Task [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Access URL]

Tasks Window Select a task → ● → Select the *Contents* field → ● → Select the information →
 ● → *Voice Call, Create Mail, Save Sender, By Yahoo! Keitai* or *By PC Browser* → ●

Delete Multiple Tasks

[Select Multi]

Tasks Window → Delete → ● → Select Multi → ● →
 → Select tasks → ● → → YES → ●

Delete All Tasks

[Delete All]

Tasks Window → Delete → ● → All → ● →
 Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●
 • When *Change View* is set to other than *All View*, you cannot delete all tasks.

Time Table Functions

From → **Time Table Window** page 9-7

Copy a Class on Time Table

[Copy]

Time Table Window Select a period → → Copy →
 ● → Select the destination period → ● →
 • To copy to multiple periods, repeat selecting a destination period and pressing ● as many times as required.

Delete All Classes from Time Table

[Delete All]

Time Table Window → Delete → ● → All → ● →
 → Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

Notepad Functions

From → **Notepad List Window** page 9-8

Edit a Notepad

[Edit Notepad]

Notepad List Window Select a notepad with contents stored → → Edit the notepad → ●
 → YES → ●

Delete All Notepads

[Delete All]

Notepad List Window → Delete → ● → All →
 ● → Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

Voice Recorder Functions

From → **Voice Recorder Window** page 9-9

Change the Storage Location of Recordings

[Select Storage]

Voice Recorder Window **Record** → ● → **Y** →
SelectStorage → ● → **Phone Memory** or
Memory Card → ●

- A memory card must be inserted to configure these settings.

Lifestyle Support Tools

Functions for Osaifu-Keitai®

From → **Card Settings Window** page 9-12

Check the Balance of a Lifestyle-Appli on the External Display

[Display Balance]

Card Settings Window **Display Balance** → ● →
Enter your Handset Code → **ON/OFF** → ● →
ON → ●

■ Adding a Lifestyle-Appli to Balance List

Card Settings Window **Display Balance** → ● →
Enter your Handset Code → **Balance List** → ● →
→ **Empty** → ● → Select the Lifestyle-Appli → ●

■ Checking the Balance

- The Side Key must be set to **Balance** in advance (page 2-4).
- The balance is shown by each Lifestyle-Appli saved on the Balance List. Pressing **▲** switches the balance display to the next Lifestyle-Appli.
- Alternatively, select the Lifestyle-Appli on the Balance List and press **□** to display the balance.

Delete Lifestyle-Appli from Balance List [Delete from Balance List]

Card Settings Window **Display Balance** → ● →
Enter your Handset Code → **Balance List** → ● →
→ Select the Lifestyle-Appli

■ Deleting One Entry

Y → **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ●

■ Deleting All Entries

Y → **Delete All** → ● → Enter your Handset Code → **YES** → ●

Change the Number of Calls to Set Call Lock

[Missed Count]

Card Settings Window **Remote Lock** → ● → Enter your Handset Code → **Call Lock** → ● → **Missed Count** → ● → Input the number of calls → ●

Set a Reply Address to Send the Lock Engaged Notification

[Address]

Card Settings Window **Remote Lock** → ● → Enter your Handset Code → **Mail Lock** → ● → **Address** → ● → **Y** → **Add** → ●

■ Setting the Mail Lock Address

To Sender → ●

■Setting an Address from Phone Book

Phone Book → ● → Select an entry → ● → Select an address → ●

■Setting an Address from Sent Log or Received Log

Sent Log or *Received Log* → ● → Select an entry → ●

■Directly Entering a Phone Number or E-mail Address

Phone Number or *Email* → ● → Enter a phone number or e-mail address → ● (twice)

Functions for S! GPS Navi

From → **S! GPS Navi Window** page 9-14

Send Current Position by Mail

[Location Mail]

S! GPS Navi Window *Location Mail* → ●

Check Location Logs

[Location Logs]

S! GPS Navi Window *Location Logs* → ● → Select a log → ●

- If ☑ is shown to the left of the log, it means the positioning was successful; ☒ means a failure.

Use Location Logs

[Open Map/Start Navi Appli/Send Message/To Locations/To Phone Book]

S! GPS Navi Window *Location Logs* → ● → Select a log → ▾ → *Open Map, Go to, Location Mail, To Locations* or *To Phone Book* → ●

Delete Location Logs

[Delete/Delete All]

S! GPS Navi Window *Location Logs* → ● → Select a log → ▾ → *Delete* → ●

■Deleting One Entry

Delete → ● → *YES* → ●

■Deleting All Entries

Delete All → ● → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* → ●

Save Location Information to My Locations

[My Locations]

S! GPS Navi Window *My Locations* → ● → Select an unregistered item → ● → Save the location information → ● → Enter a title → ●

Functions for Idokoro Mail

From → **Idokoro Mail Window** page 9-16

Delete People from the Recipients List

[Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

Idokoro Mail Window *Recipients List* → ● → Select a list → ▾ → *Delete* → ● → *YES* → ●

■Deleting All Entries

Idokoro Mail Window *Recipients List* → ● → ▾ → *Delete All* → ● → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* → ●

Delete an Area List

[Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

Idokoro Mail Window *Areas List* → ● → Select an area list → ▾ → *Delete* → ● → *YES* → ●

■Deleting All Entries

Idokoro Mail Window *Areas List* → ● → ▾ → *Delete All* → ● → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* → ●

Alarm Functions

From → Alarm List Window page 9-18

Set Alarm Window page 9-18

Change an Alarm Name

[Alarm Name]

Set Alarm Window Select an alarm name → ● →

Enter an alarm name → ● → [OK] → OK → ●

Change the Alarm Tone

[Alarm Tone]

Set Alarm Window Alarm Tone → ● → Tone →



■ Setting a Sound Preinstalled in the Handset as the Alarm Tone

Patterns or Melodies → ● → Select an alarm tone → ● → [OK] (twice) → OK → ●

■ Setting a File Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● →

Select a file → ● (twice) → [OK] (twice) → OK → ●

■ Setting the Time Reader as the Alarm Tone

Time Reading → ● → [OK] (twice) → OK → ●

Change the Alarm Ring Time

[Duration]

Set Alarm Window Alarm Tone → ● → Duration

→ ● → Enter a ring time → ● → [OK] (twice) →

OK → ●

Edit an Alarm

[Edit Alarm]

Alarm List Window Select an alarm → ● → Select an item → ● → Edit the item → ● → [OK] → OK

→ ●

Delete All Alarms

[Reset All]

Alarm List Window [OK] → Reset All → ● → Enter

your Handset Code → YES → ●

World Clock Functions

From → World Clock Setting Window page 9-19

Edit a City Name

[Rename City]

World Clock Setting Window City 1 or City 2 → ●

→ ● to select a city → [OK] → Rename City →

● → Enter a city name → ●

Functions for Calculator

From → Calculator Window page 9-20

Calculate Currency Conversion

[Converter]

Calculator Window [OK] → Converter → ● →

Exchange Rate → ● → Main Currency or

Sub Currency → ● → Enter a rate → ● →

[OK] (three times) → Enter an amount → [OK] →

Converter → ● → To Main or To Sub → ●

Functions for S! Quick News

From → S! Quick News Window page 9-22

List Window page 9-22

S! Loop List Window page 9-22

Update Lists Automatically

[Auto Refresh]

S! Quick News Window Settings → ● → Auto

Refresh → ● → Flash News, News or S!

Loop → ●

■ Setting Flash News to Update Automatically

Select the time interval for the automatic update

→ ● → ● → ● → YES → ●

■Setting News/S! Loop to Update Automatically

Automatic → ● → ● → ● → YES → ●

- S! Quick News (Flash News) and S! Loop List updates do not take place during late hours at night.
- Automatic update may not occur if your handset is outside the service area or signal reception is poor.
- If automatic updates stop for some reason, performing a manual update (page 2-8) can restart the automatic updates.

Delete Registered Contents and Items [Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

List Window / S! Loop List Window ☑ → Delete → ● → One → ● → YES → ●

■Deleting All Entries

List Window / S! Loop List Window ☑ → Delete → ● → All → ● → Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

S! Information Channel

From → Info Channel Window page 9-23
Weather Indicator Window page 9-23

Download Unreceived Information [Get Latest]

Info Channel Window Get Latest → ● → YES → ●

A connection is established to the redelivery page.

- You can download only the latest information. Content cannot be downloaded on non-delivery days.

■Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt

Information Prompt appears → Info Channel → ● → YES → ●

Check Past Updates [History]

Info Channel Window History → ● → Select the information → ●

Update Weather Forecast Manually [Update Weather Forecast]

Weather Indicator Window Update → ● → YES → ●

Scanning QR Codes

From → Scan Results Window page 9-26

Use Scan Results [Call/Send Message/To Phone Book/ Access URL]

Scan Results Window Select the information → ● → Call, Send Message or To Phone Book → ●

- When a URL is scanned, select YES after selecting the URL.

Paste Scan Results into Message Text [To Message]

Scan Results Window ☑ → To Message → ●

Use Location Information [Start Navi Appli/To Locations]

Scan Results Window ☑ → Go to or To Locations → ●

Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

From → Ku-man's Room page 9-27

Check What You can Do in Ku-man's Room [Help]

Ku-man's Room ☑ → 1/7 (Help) → ●

S! Town (Japanese)/S! Loop (Japanese)	10-2
S! Friend's Status	10-3
About S! Friend's Status	10-3
Using S! Friend's Status	10-4
S! Circle Talk	10-6
About S! Circle Talk	10-6
Using S! Circle Talk	10-7
Advanced Features	10-9


S! Town (Japanese)/S! Loop (Japanese)

Using S! Town

S! Town is an online 3D virtual space. Go online to chat, shop, etc.

- When you use S! Town for the first time, a user registration (free) and profile registration are required. Please read and agree to the terms of service before the registration.
- Packet transmission fees apply to use S! Town. The fees may be expensive.
- If you subscribe to Website access restrictions, you cannot use S! Town.

1 Press  → **Communications** → 

2 Select **S! Town** → 

- You can cancel the S! Town service by selecting **S!タウン** (S! Town) from **マイメニュー** (My Menu) of Yahoo! Keitai.
- Upgrade notification may appear when you start S! Town. Follow the onscreen instructions to upgrade S! Town.

• About the Library

Downloaded S! Appli that expand the functions of S! Town are automatically stored in the Library. To check S! Appli in the Library:

Press  → **Communications** →  → **S! Town** →  (Lib.)

Using S! Loop

Use S! Loop to keep a diary on the web or exchange information via BBS.

1 Press  → **Communications** → 

2 Select **S! Loop** →  → **YES** → 

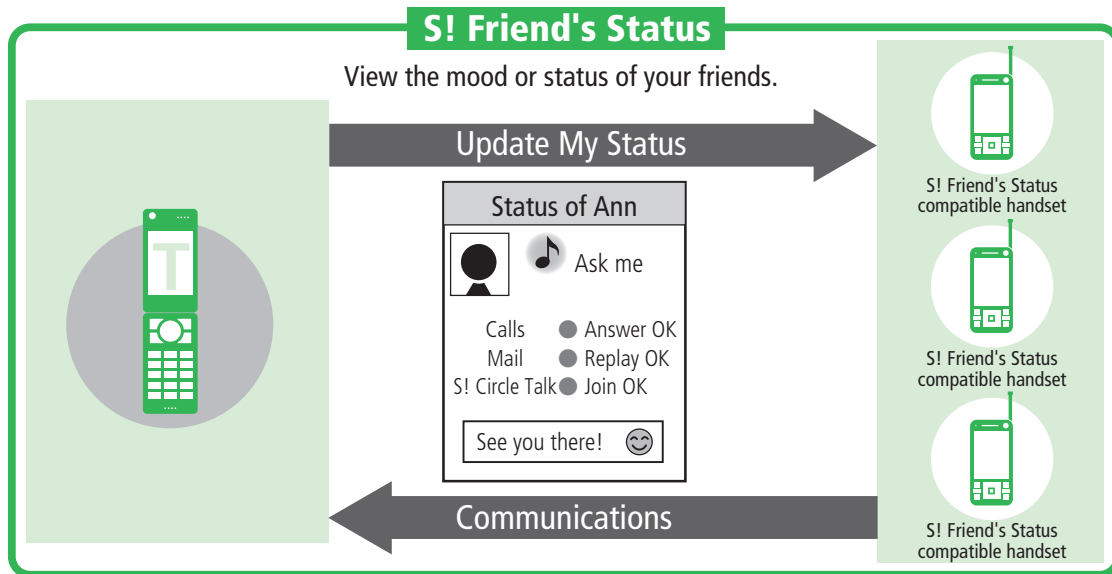
S! Friend's Status

About S! Friend's Status

S! Friend's Status is a function that lets you share your current mood and availability to receive incoming calls, messages or S! Circle Talk calls with your friends that are on your S! Friend's Status Members List.

It is possible to check your S! Friend's Status from Standby by adding the members to Active Window.

- A separate subscription is required to use S! Friend's Status. A monthly fee is also required.



- S! Friend's Status is unavailable if IP Service is set to **OFF**.

Using S! Friend's Status

Setting Your Own Status (My Status)

- 1 Press and hold



My Status Window

- 2 Select **Online / Offline** \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow **Online** \rightarrow

\bullet \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bullet

- To go offline:

Select **Offline** \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow (Update)

- 3 Select a status such as **ちよととお殿わちや** (Good mood) or something \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \bullet

- 4 Select an Answer Status \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \bullet

- To change all your Answer Statuses at once:

Press (All) \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow

Check the settings \rightarrow \bullet

- To customize All Answer Statuses Settings:

Press (All) \rightarrow **Customize** \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow

(Edit) \rightarrow Customize the settings \rightarrow

(Save) \rightarrow \bullet

- 5 Select the Comment field \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter a comment \rightarrow \bullet

- 6 Press (Update)

- If you switch to offline, you and other people cannot check each others' current condition. Also, you will not be able to create S! Friend's Status Members List or talk to people with S! Circle Talk.

Adding Members

When you add a person to your S! Friend's Status Members List, an invitation is sent.

- You can only add friends who have a SoftBank handset that supports S! Friend's Status to your S! Friend's Status Members List.
- To create an S! Friend's Status Members List, set My Status to **Online**.
- When the person accepts your invitation, you receive a Saving Completed notification, and you and the person can check out each other's status.

- 1 Press \bullet \rightarrow **Communications** \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow **Friend Status** \rightarrow \bullet

- 2 Press (Add) \rightarrow **Phone Book** or **Direct Input** \rightarrow \bullet

- If you select **Phone Book**, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM Card or memory card).

- 3 Select a member or enter a phone number \rightarrow \bullet

- To select a group:

Select \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select a group \rightarrow \bullet

- 4 Press (Save) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bullet

A Saving Request notification is sent to the person, and **Waiting** is displayed in the S! Friend's Status Members List window.

- A Saving Failed notification is sent when a person's S! Friend's Status Members List already contains 30 people.

Adding a Member from Saving Request

If someone wants to add you to his/her S! Friend's Status Members List, you will receive a Saving Request notification. If you accept, the other person is saved to the S! Friend's Status Members List and you and the person can check out each other's status.

1 Information Prompt appears →

Notification → ●

2 Select a Saving Request notification →

● → YES → ●

- If you select **NO**, a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person and the person is not saved to the S! Friend's Status Members List.
- If you select **NO** and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, you cannot send the person an invitation to the S! Friend's Status Members List for 24 hours.
- Although you select **NO** and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, if the other person does not receive the notification because he/she is outside the service area or offline for more than 24 hours, you will receive another Saving Request notification when the person comes online.

Checking S! Friend's Status

- 1 Press ● → Communications → ● → Friend Status → ●



S! Friend's Status Members List Window

- 2 Select a group with ●

- 3 Select a member with ● → ●



S! Friend's Status Details Window

More Features



S! Friend's Status Functions

(▶ page 10-9)



Settings for S! Friend's Status

(▶ page 13-44)

- Edit Status Settings of My Status
- Save Members to Active Window
- Ignore Saving Requests from People Not in Phone Book
- Ignore All Saving Requests

Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

(▶ page 13-44)

- Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

About S! Circle Talk

S! Circle Talk is a walkie-talkie style communication service. Talk one-on-one or with a group of people (up to ten people) using S! Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets.

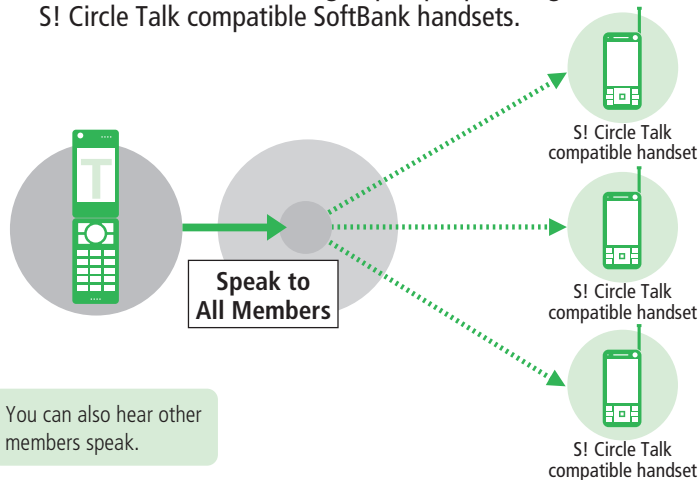
Press and hold the key to talk (one person at a time) and release the key when finished talking. Check the S! Circle Talk window to check each participant's status and see who is currently talking.

- You must subscribe to S! Friend's Status to use S! Circle Talk. Transmission fees apply for using S! Circle Talk.

- S! Circle Talk is unavailable if IP Service is set to **OFF**.
- S! Circle Talk is unavailable if S! Friend's Status is set to **Offline**. Switch to **Online** (page 10-4) to use S! Circle Talk.
- S! Circle Talk is unavailable during voice or video calls. Also, you cannot receive another S! Circle Talk call during S! Circle Talk.

S! Circle Talk

Talk one-on-one or with a group of people using S! Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets.



Using S! Circle Talk

Adding Members

Adding a Person

1 Press **☉** → **Communications** → **☉** → **Circle Talk** → **☉**

- A confirmation window appears the first time you start.

2 Press **☑** → **Add Members** → **☉**

- If no one is on the S! Circle Talk Members List, press **☑** (Add).



Add Members Window

3 Select **Personal** → **☉** → **Phone Book**, **Friend Status** or **Direct Input** → **☉**

- If you select **Phone Book**, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM Card or memory card).

4 Select a member or enter a phone number → **☉**

Creating a Group

Organize entries by Group to make an S! Circle Talk call to a group of people.

1 From Add Members Window, select **Group** → **☉** → **Create New** → **☉**

2 Select **Empty** → **☉** → **Phone Book**, **Friend Status** or **Direct Input** → **☉**

- If you select **Phone Book**, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM Card or memory card).

3 Select a member or enter a phone number → **☉**

- To save more members, repeat **2** and **3**.
- If you want to change a member's phone number, select the member, press **☉** twice, and then enter the phone number.

4 Press **☑** (Add) → Enter a group name → **☉**

Adding a Group from S! Friend's Status Members List

1 From Add Members Window, select **Group** → **☉** → **Friend Status** → **☉**

2 Select a group → **☉**

Initiating S! Circle Talk

1 Enter a phone number, and then press and hold **☑**

- To make an S! Circle Talk call from the S! Circle Talk Members List, press **☑** in Standby, select a person or group, and then press **☑** (CT).

2 Press and hold **☑** to talk

- Talk when **Myself** appears.
- Initiator can talk as soon as S! Circle Talk is connected.
- **Myself** disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.






3 To sign off, press **POWER** → **YES** → **☉**

- When only one person remains, the S! Circle Talk ends automatically.












- When the other's voice is output from the speaker during an S! Circle Talk, the volume is fixed at level 3, even if the speaker volume is set higher than level 3.

Joining S! Circle Talk

- 1 Press  (Answer) when S! Circle Talk invitation arrives
S! Circle Talk is connected.
 - To reject the connection, press  (Reject).
 - Alternatively, press  to answer.

S! Circle Talk Operations




Calling Another Member

- 1 During an S! Circle Talk, press  →
Add → 
 - 2 Select *Members List* →  → Select a member → 
 - To call a person from the S! Friend's Status Members List:
Select *Friend Status* →  → Select an entry → 
 - To call a person from Phone Book:
Select *Phone Book* →  → Select an entry →  → Select a phone number → 
 - To enter a phone number directly:
Select *Direct Input* →  → Enter a phone number → 

Adjusting the Speaker (Earpiece) Volume

- 1 During an S! Circle Talk, use 

Switching Between Earpiece & Speaker

- 1 During an S! Circle Talk, press  ( / )

More Features



S! Circle Talk Functions ( page 10-10)



Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk ( page 13-44)

- Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk



Communications

S! Friend's Status Functions

From →

S! Friend's Status Members List Window page 10-5

S! Friend's Status Details Window page 10-5

Add a Member

[Add Members]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window → Add Members → ●

Delete Members

[Deletion Request]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group

■ Deleting One Member

Select a member → → Delete → ● → One → ● → YES → ●

■ Deleting Multiple Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status) → → Delete → ● → Select Multi → ● → Select members → ● → → YES → ●

■ Deleting All Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status) → → Delete → ● → All → ● → Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

- After a member is deleted from the S! Friend's Status Members List, you cannot send/receive a Saving Request notification to/from that person for 24 hours.

Move Members to a Different Group

[Change Group]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group

■ Moving One Member

Select a member → → Change Group → ● → One → ● → Select a group → ●

■ Moving Multiple Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status) → → Change Group → ● → Select Multi → ● → Select members → ● → → Select a group → ●

■ Moving All Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status) → → Change Group → ● → All → ● → Select a group → ●

Edit a Group Name

[Rename]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group → → Rename → ● → Edit the group name → ●

Update S! Friend's Status Manually

[Status Update]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window → Settings → ● → Status Update → ●

Check a Notification

[Notification]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window → Notification → ●

Contact a Member According to His/Her Current Status

[Call/Send Mail]

■ Making a Voice Call/Video Call

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the call answer status → ● → → Voice Call or Video Call → ●

■ Sending a Message

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the mail answer status → ● → Create a message → ●
• For details on creating messages, see pages 4-4 and 4-6.

■ Initiating S! Circle Talk

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the S! Circle Talk answer status → ●

S! Circle Talk Functions

Edit S! Circle Talk Members List

[Edit Group]

▲☎→Select a group from S! Circle Talk Members List→▽☎→*Edit Group*→●

■Editing the Group Name

Rename→●→Edit the group name→●

■Adding Members

Change Member→●→*Empty*→●→

Phone Book, Friend Status or Direct Input→●→Select a member or enter a phone number→●→☎

■Changing a Member's Phone Number

Change Member→●→Select a member→●(twice)→Enter a phone number→●→☎

■Deleting a Member

Change Member→●→Select a member→▽☎→*Delete*→●→*YES*→●→☎

■Deleting All Members

Change Member→●→▽☎→*Delete All*→●→Enter your Handset Code→*YES*→●

Delete a Group or Person from S! Circle Talk Members List

[Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

▲☎→Select a member or a group→▽☎→*Delete*→●→*One*→●→*YES*→●

■Deleting Multiple Entries

▲☎→▽☎→*Delete*→●→*Select Multi*→●→Select members or groups→●→☎→*YES*→●

■Deleting All Entries

▲☎→▽☎→*Delete*→●→*All*→●→Enter your Handset Code→*YES*→●

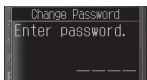


Changing Handset Code	11-2
Prohibiting/Limiting Use	11-3
Protecting Handset Information	11-4
Advanced Features	11-5

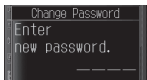
Changing Handset Code

- Do not forget your Handset Code and do not reveal it to others. Write down your Handset Code.

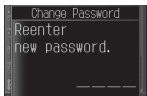
- 1** Press **ⓘ** → *Settings* → **ⓘ** → *Security* → **ⓘ** → *Change Password* → **ⓘ**



- 2** Enter your current Handset Code



- 3** Enter your new Handset Code



- 4** Re-enter your new Handset Code for confirmation

Prohibiting/Limiting Use

Activating PIN Settings

Set whether you are requested to enter your PIN to perform verification each time the power is turned on when a USIM Card is inserted in the handset.

- 1 Press → **Settings** → → **Security** →



Security Setting Window

- 2 Select **PIN Settings** → → **ON/OFF** → → **ON** →
- 3 Enter your PIN →

Prohibiting Handset Use

Set Password Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Password Lock is activated, your Handset Code is required to use the handset.

- 1 From Security Setting Window, select **Password Lock** → → **Enter your Handset Code**



- 2 Select an item to set → → **ON** →
 - The settings are shown below.
 - Phone Closed: Locks the handset when you close it.
 - Power Saving: Locks the handset when the Display is turned off for Power Saving.
 - Power Off: Locks the handset when it is turned on.

- To cancel Password Lock, enter your Handset Code to release Password Lock temporarily, and then set Password Lock to **OFF**.
- **Phone Closed** locks the handset when you close it in Standby. **Power Saving** locks the handset when the Display is turned off after a certain amount of time (as set in the power saving settings) has passed in Standby.
- You cannot make a one-touch call from the Earphone-Microphone while the handset is locked with Password Lock.

Keypad Lock

Keypad Lock allows you to disable the keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket.

- 1 Press and hold
 - To cancel Keypad Lock, press and hold while it is set.

- Keypad Lock cannot be set when Bluetooth®/infrared communication is activated.
- When Keypad Lock is set, Information Prompt does not appear.

Hold

The hold function prevents unintentional operations while your handset is closed. When Hold is set, appears on the External Display.

- 1 Press and hold when your handset is closed
 - To cancel Hold, press and hold while it is set and the handset is closed.

- When battery level is low, Hold may be ineffective even when set.

Using Secure Remote Lock

By using the Secure Remote Lock service, if your handset is lost or stolen, you can lock the functions of the handset remotely by using a PC or mobile phone.

Once the lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for turning the power on, making emergency calls and calling SoftBank Customer Center (157). The IC Card Lock (page 9-12) will also be turned on automatically.

For more information on conditions for using the Secure Remote Lock, go to <http://www.softbank.jp> or access My SoftBank from your handset.

Accessing My SoftBank from a Mobile Phone

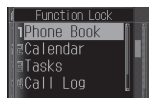
- 1 Press \square → \square → \square (Menu List) → \odot → My SoftBank → \odot

Protecting Handset Information

Prohibiting Use of Phone Book and Other Features

Set Function Lock to prevent unauthorized access to Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks functions, Call Log and Sent/Received Log. When Function Lock is set, your Handset Code must be entered to access these functions/features.

- 1 From Security Setting Window, select **Function Lock** → \odot → Enter your Handset Code



- 2 Select a function → \odot → Lock → \odot

Displaying Secret Data

Phone Book entries saved as secret (page 2-17) can be displayed.

- 1 From Security Setting Window, select **Secret Mode** → \odot → Enter your Handset Code



- 2 Select **Show** → \odot

- Secret Mode is set to **Hide** when handset power is turned off.

More Features



Functions for Prohibiting/Limiting Use
(▶ page 11-5)

Security

Functions for Prohibiting/Limiting Use

From Security Setting Window page 11-3

Change PIN/PIN2

[Change PIN/PIN2]

- Set PIN Settings to **ON** before you change the PIN.
- Do not forget your PIN and do not reveal it to others. Write down your PIN.

Security Setting Window **PIN Settings**

Change PIN or **Change PIN2** Enter current PIN/PIN2 Enter new PIN/PIN2 Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation

Cancel PIN Lock

[Cancel PIN Lock]

While the PIN/PIN2 Lock is set, do an operation that requires PIN/PIN2 entry Enter PUK/PUK2 Enter new PIN/PIN2 Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation

- If the Personal Unblocking Key (PUK) code is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM Card is locked (USIM lock). If the USIM lock is set, it cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Restrict Access to the Internet by Inputting URLs

[Web]

Security Setting Window **Restricted Mode** **Web** Enter Internet Security Code (page 1-14) **Set Regulation** **ON**

■ When Internet Security Code is Not Registered

Security Setting Window **Restricted Mode** **Web** (twice) Enter Internet Security Code Re-enter new Internet Security Code for confirmation **Do not Save**

- To register a clue to your Internet Security Code, select **Save** and enter a clue.

■ Changing Internet Security Code

Security Setting Window **Restricted Mode** **Web** Enter Internet Security Code **Change Password** (twice) Enter new Internet Security Code Re-enter new Internet Security Code for confirmation **Do not Save**

- To register a clue to your Internet Security Code, select **Save** and enter a clue.

Infrared	12-2
About Infrared	12-2
Using Infrared	12-2
Bluetooth®	12-4
About Bluetooth®	12-4
Using Bluetooth®	12-5
PC Connection	12-8
About PC Connection	12-8
Memory Card Backup	12-10
About Memory Card Backup	12-10
S! Addressbook Back-up	12-12
About S! Addressbook Back-up	12-12
Using S! Addressbook Back-up	12-13
Advanced Features	12-14

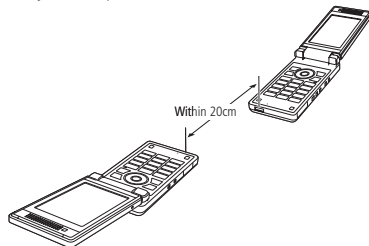
About Infrared

Exchange the Calendar data of your handset, Phone Book entries of your handset, memory card or USIM Card, pictures/videos taken or recorded with the camera and Data Folder data that can be forwarded with an infrared compatible device (PC, handset).

Precautions

- A dirty Infrared Port may cause an infrared communication failure. If the Infrared Port is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft cloth while making sure not to scratch the port.
- Do not move the devices until the file transfer is complete.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light may interfere with infrared communication.
- If the handset receives a voice/video call while it is sending or receiving files via infrared communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is canceled.
- When sending/receiving vObjects, some information may be altered or not received.
- You cannot use Bluetooth® communication or USB functions other than the charge function during infrared communication.
- S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk are unavailable while transferring files even if IP Service is set to *ON*.

- Bring the Infrared Port of your handset to within 20 cm of the Infrared Port of the destination device and align both ports. Make sure no objects are placed between them.



Authentication Password

The authentication password (four digits) is for sending and receiving all data by infrared communication.

When sending or receiving all data, the same authentication password needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

Using Infrared

Activating Infrared

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via infrared communication.

- 1 Press **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Infrared**



Infrared Window

- 2 Select **ON/OFF**
- 3 Select **ON**
 - To cancel infrared communication, select **OFF**.

- Infrared communication is unavailable when Offline Mode is set to *ON*.
- If the handset does not communicate via infrared communication in three minutes after Infrared has been set to *ON*, the infrared communication standby is canceled automatically.

Transferring Files

Sending a File

- 1 Access a function that supports infrared

2 Select a file → → *Send* →

- Select *Send vCard* to access from Phone Book.

3 Select *Via Infrared* →

- Files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

Receiving Files

The handset can receive files when the Infrared setting is *ON*.

1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device

2 Select *YES* →

- To reject the reception of files, select *NO*.
- When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, event, task or notepad, select *YES* to save it to your Phone Book, Event, Tasks or Notepad.

3 Select *Phone Memory or Memory Card* →

- The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, events on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

1 From Infrared Window, select *Transfer All* →

2 Enter your Handset Code

3 Select *Phone Book or Cal./Tasks* →

- When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send images saved in Phone Book. Select *Without Image* to send the Phone Book entries without images.
- When sending events/tasks, a confirmation window appears. Select *Without Past* to send events/tasks without including past events/tasks.

4 Enter the authentication password

Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, events on the Calendar or tasks can be received from another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

The handset can receive files when the Infrared setting is *ON*.

1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device

2 Enter your Handset Code → Enter the authentication password

3 Select *Add* →

- To overwrite all files:
Select *Overwrite* →  → *YES* → 
- To cancel receiving files, select *Discard*.

- The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

More Features



Functions for Infrared Communication
(▶ page 12-14)

About Bluetooth®

Transfer Phone Book, picture and other files between your handset and another Bluetooth® compatible device. Also use a handsfree compatible device to make handsfree calls.

Frequency

The Bluetooth® system on the handset uses the 2.4 GHz spectrum ranging from 2.402 GHz to 2.480 GHz. Other wireless devices may be using the same frequency. In order to avoid radio interference, note the followings:

- The Bluetooth® system on the handset uses 2.4 GHz spectrum. This spectrum is used by industrial, scientific, and medical equipment (microwaves etc.), other radio stations of the same kind, premises radio stations for radio frequency identification which require a license (used in production lines etc.), license free specified low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter "other radio stations").
1. Before using the handset, make sure there are no other radio stations nearby.
 2. If radio interference occurs between the handset and other radio stations, change locations to use the handset, or stop using the handset (stop emitting radio waves) at once.
 3. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

• Handset



This wireless device uses 2.4 GHz spectrum. It employs FH-SS modulation, and causes interference within a 10-meter radius.

Precautions

- Communication tests have not been performed for all Bluetooth® compatible devices. There is no guarantee of connection with all Bluetooth® devices.
- The security function used for wireless communication complies with the standard specifications of Bluetooth®. However, take care when using Bluetooth® for data communication because, in some cases, security may be inadequate depending on the operating environment and configuration.
- SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any data generated or information leaked during Bluetooth® communication.
- If the handset receives a voice/video call while it is sending or receiving files via Bluetooth® communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is canceled.
- When sending/receiving vObjects, some information may be altered or not received.

- You cannot use infrared communication and USB functions other than the charge function during Bluetooth® communication.
- S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk are unavailable while transferring files even if IP Service is set to **ON**.

Authentication PIN Code

Authentication PIN code (Bluetooth Passkey) is a 4 to 16 digit number required to connect to a compatible device. Code must be entered by both devices before connection is established.

- You can set a different authentication PIN code on each device.

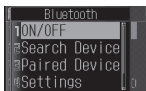
Using Bluetooth®

Use Bluetooth® to connect the handset with other Bluetooth compatible devices. Transfer files with compatible devices and make dial-up connections.

Activating Bluetooth®

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via Bluetooth® communication.

- 1 Press **ON/OFF** → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth**



Bluetooth Window

- 2 Select **ON/OFF**

- 3 Select **ON**

- To cancel the Bluetooth® communication standby, select **OFF**.

- Bluetooth® communication is unavailable when Offline Mode is set to **ON**.

Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices

Finding and Pairing with a Device

Before establishing a Bluetooth® connection, you need to search for, find and then pair with a Bluetooth® compatible device.

- 1 From Bluetooth Window, select **Search Device**

The handset starts searching for Bluetooth® devices and then the names and icons of devices you can connect to appear.

- The device type icons are as follows:

	PC		Audio device
	Mobile phone		Peripherals
	LAN		Printer
	Headset		Other device
	Handfree device		

- 2 Select a device → Enter an authentication PIN code → YES or NO

When the handset is connected to another Bluetooth® compatible device, the device is registered in the paired device list.

- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.

- An authentication PIN code needs to be entered within approximately 30 seconds for security reasons.

Connecting to a Paired Handsfree Device

- 1 From Bluetooth Window, select **Paired Device**



Paired Device List Window






- 2 Select a handsfree device

- If a handsfree device is not registered, press **Search** and select a handsfree device to register it to the paired device list.

- 3 Select **Connect**

Transferring Files




Sending a File

- 1 Access a function that supports Bluetooth®
- 2 Select a file →  → **Send** → 
 - Select **Send vCard** to access from Phone Book.
- 3 Select **Via Bluetooth** → 
- 4 From Paired Device List Window, select a device → 
 - If the receiving device is not registered, select  (Search) and then select the receiving device.

- Files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.



Receiving Files

The handset can receive files when the Bluetooth setting is **ON**.

- 1 In Standby, receive a connection request → **YES** → 
 - If the device information of the handset is not registered on the sending device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.
- 2 Select **YES** → 
 - To reject the reception of files, select **NO**.
 - When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, event, task or notepad, select **YES** to save it to your Phone Book, Event, Tasks or Notepad.
- 3 Select **Phone Memory or Memory Card** → 
 - The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, events on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another Bluetooth® compatible handset.

- 1 From Bluetooth Window, select **Transfer All** → 
- 2 Enter your Handset Code
- 3 Select **Phone Book or Cal./Tasks** → 
 - When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send images saved in Phone Book. Select **Without Image** to send the Phone Book entries without images.
 - When sending events/tasks, a confirmation window appears. Select **Without Past** to send events/tasks without including past events/tasks.
- 4 Select the receiving device → 
 - If the receiving device is not registered, select  (Search) and then select the receiving device.
 - Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.



Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, events on the Calendar or tasks can be received from another Bluetooth® compatible handset. The handset can receive files when the Bluetooth setting is *ON*.

1 In Standby, receive a connection request → YES →

- If the device information of the handset is not registered on the sending device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.

2 Select Add →

- To overwrite all files:
Select **Overwrite** →  → Enter your Handset Code → YES → 
- To cancel receiving files, select **Discard**.

- The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

More Features



Functions for Bluetooth® Communication (▶ page 12-14)



Settings for Bluetooth® Communication (▶ page 13-36)

- Display Details of a Paired Bluetooth® Compatible Device
- Set a Bluetooth® Compatible Device as a Trusted Device
- Display Details of the Handset
- Change the Name of the Handset
- Communicate Using a Handsfree Device
- Hide the Handset

About PC Connection

Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC to transfer music files. You can also check the Data Folder of the handset on your PC.

Getting Started

- Install the USB Host Driver and Phone Monitor software before connecting the USB cable. For details on the installation procedure, refer to the USB Host Driver Installation Guide and Phone Monitor Manual on the supplied Utility Software (CD-ROM).
- For details on the PC operating environments supported, refer to the Phone Monitor Manual on the supplied Utility Software (CD-ROM).
- When using the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into the USB port of the PC.
- You cannot use USB functions other than the charge function during infrared/Bluetooth® communication.

Configuring USB Connection Mode

Configure the mode for using the USB cable to connect a PC to the handset in Standby. Select **Card Reader** to transfer music from a PC and **Communication** for a dial-up connection.

1 Press  → **Settings** →  → **Connectivity**

→  → **USB** → 

2 Select **Connection** →  →

Communication, Card Reader or Always Ask → 

- Select **Always Ask** to choose the connection mode whenever you connect the USB cable in Standby.

- If the handset is not in Standby when connecting the USB cable, the handset changes to **Communication** mode even if Connection has been set to **Card Reader** or **Always Ask**.

Transferring Music from a PC to a Memory Card

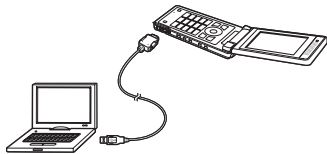
To transfer music files from a PC, use Card Reader mode to establish a connection between the PC and your handset.

- Offline Mode is set while your handset is in Card Reader mode. When the handset is in Offline Mode, it cannot make/receive calls, send/receive messages, nor connect to Yahoo! Keitai. In this mode, all the keys are disabled.
- Timer viewing/recording of digital TV will not start in Card Reader mode.
- Music files cannot be played on the handset unless they are transferred using music transfer software.
- For details on transferring music files, refer to the BeatJam 2008 for 921T Guide Book (Japanese).

Switching to Card Reader Mode by Connecting the USB Cable

1 In Standby, connect the handset to a PC with the USB cable

- Open the cover of External Device Port and plug in the connector of the USB cable with the inscription facing down.
- If the Connection is set to *Always Ask*, select *Card Reader*.



- If Connection is set to *Communication*, the handset does not change to *Card Reader* mode when connecting the USB cable in Standby.
- If the handset is not in Standby when connecting the USB cable, the handset changes to *Communication* mode even if Connection has been set to *Card Reader* or *Always Ask*.

Transferring Data

- 1 Switch your handset to Card Reader mode
- 2 Follow the instructions on the PC

Canceling the Card Reader Mode

- 1 Use the connected PC's function to remove an external device
- 2 Remove the USB cable from the handset

More Features



Functions for PC Connection

(▶ page 12-15)



Settings for PC Connection

(▶ page 13-37)

- Use the USB Cable for Charging

Memory Card Backup

About Memory Card Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, events and other information to a memory card, and restore as required.

Precautions

- Some data cannot be transferred to the memory card.
- Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file in a memory card. The file may be damaged.
- Copyrighted data may not be transferred to the memory card or restored to the handset, or may be deleted from the memory card/handset after the transfer.
- If the file name of data restored to the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security lock set on the handset Data Folder will not be reflected in the transferred data.
- Files in the **TV** folder cannot be transferred to the memory card/handset.

About Backing Up Content Keys

- Since only a single content key backup file can be saved to a memory card, backing up another content key will overwrite the previously saved backup file. If you want to maintain the previously backed up content key, import the backup file from the memory card to the handset and then perform the backup operation again.
- The file whose content key has been moved to the memory card for backup will no longer be available on the handset.
- Importing a content key into the handset adds it to other content keys in the handset. It does not overwrite the current handset content keys.

Backing Up Data to a Memory Card

- 1 Press **Settings** → **Backup**



Backup Window

- 2 Select **Transfer All** → **Backup**

- 3 Select the data to back up →



- To select other data, repeat this step.
- To select or unselect all the data:
Press **Mark All** or **Unmark All**

4 Press (Trans.) → → → Enter your Handset Code

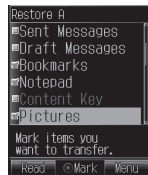
- When transferring Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved in Phone Book. Select **NO** to transfer the Phone Book entries without images.
- When transferring events on the Calendar or tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to transfer past events/tasks. Select **Futures Only** to transfer events/tasks without including past events/tasks.

Restoring Data from the Memory Card

1 From Backup Window, select **Transfer All** → → **Restore A** or **Restore B** →

- If **There are no data.** is displayed, select either **Restore A** or **Restore B** to restore the data.

2 Select the data to restore →



- To select other data, repeat this step.
- To select or unselect all the data:
Press → **Mark All** or **Unmark All** →

3 Press (Read) → → Enter your Handset Code

- To restore Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad: Select **Add** or **Overwrite** → (twice) → Select data →
- If you select **Add**, you can add the data without deleting data stored on the handset.

More Features



Functions for Memory Card Backup
(▶ page 12-15)

S! Addressbook Back-up

About S! Addressbook Back-up

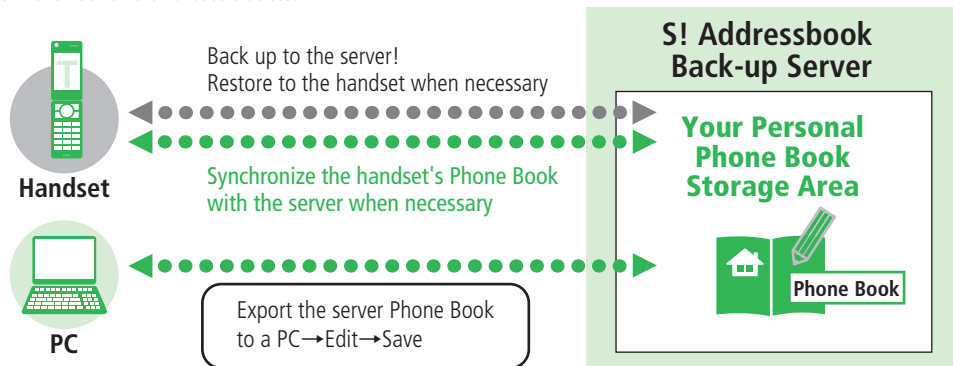
S! Addressbook Back-up is a service that allows you to back up the handset's Phone Book to a network server and synchronize the handset's Phone Book with the data on the server. It is useful for recovering information if your handset is lost or damaged.

For details on S! Addressbook Back-up, access the following website.

<http://www.softbank.jp/SAB>

Precautions

- The following Phone Book items cannot be synchronized.
Be careful because the Phone Book settings on the handset are completely deleted when the data is read from the server.
Ringtones/External Light settings/Pictures/Secrets
- The Phone Book on the server is deleted when you end your S! Addressbook Back-up contract.
- Be careful about timing and synchronization type setting when you back up or read data on the server.
- If you synchronize Phone Book data with the synchronization type of **Synchronize, From Client**, or **Backup** after deleting all the Phone Book entries on your handset, the Phone Book on the server is deleted.
- If you synchronize Phone Book data with the synchronization type of **Synchronize, From Server**, or **Restore** after deleting all the Phone Book entries on the server, the Phone Book on the handset is deleted.



Using S! Addressbook Back-up

Synchronizing Phone Book

Connect to the network server so that Phone Book data on the handset and the server can be complemented by each other.

- When synchronizing for the first time, the **Synchronize** type is used regardless of the synchronization type setting.

- 1 Press **Phone Book** → **Addr. Bkup**



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

- 2 Select **Start Sync** → **Start**

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

- Upon starting synchronization, your handset is connected to the Internet. Transmission fees apply during Internet connections. Ending synchronization terminates the connection automatically.

Setting Synchronization Type

Select from the following types.

Synchronize	Back up changes in the handset's Phone Book to the server and download new information in the server's Phone Book to the handset simultaneously.
From Client	Back up changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book.
From Server	Changes to the information in the server's Phone Book are reflected to the handset.
Backup	Delete the existing Phone Book data on the server and back up all Phone Book data in the handset to the server.
Restore	Delete the existing Phone Book data in the handset and reflect all Phone Book data on the server to the handset.

- 1 From S! Addressbook Back-up Window, select **Sync Settings** → **Sync Type**



- 2 Select a synchronization type → **(Save)**

More Features



Functions for S! Addressbook Back-up
(▶ page 12-16)

File Transfer/Backup

Functions for Infrared Communication

Send Information of My Details [Send My Details]

● → *Phone Book* → ● → *My Details* → ●
→  → *Via Infrared* → ●

Use Infrared for Dial-up Connections [Dial-up Connections]

In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device

- The handset can use dial-up connections when the Infrared setting (page 12-2) is *ON*.
- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high transmission fees.

- When accessing the Internet by connecting the handset to a PC or PDA (i.e. mobile data communication), a large amount of data is often transferred in a very short time resulting in high packet transmission fees. You are recommended to check the fees now and then during the mobile data communication.

Functions for Bluetooth® Communication

From → **Paired Device List Window** page 12-5

Change a Paired Device Name [Device Name]

Paired Device List Window Select a device →  →
Device Name → ● → Enter a device name → ●

Delete a Paired Device [Delete Device]

Paired Device List Window Select a device →  →
Delete → ● → *YES* → ●

Cut Off Connection to a Handsfree Device [Disconnect]

Paired Device List Window Select a handsfree device
→  → *Disconnect* → ●

Send Information of My Details [Send My Details]

● → *Phone Book* → ● → *My Details* → ●
● →  → *Via Bluetooth* → ● → Select a device → ●

Use Bluetooth® for Dial-up Connections [Dial-up Connections]

In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth® compatible device → *YES* → ●

● → Enter an authentication PIN code → ●

- The handset can use dial-up connections when the Bluetooth setting (page 12-5) is *ON*.
- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device to connect.
- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high transmission fees.

- When accessing the Internet by connecting the handset to a PC or PDA (i.e. mobile data communication), a large amount of data is often transferred in a very short time resulting in high packet transmission fees. You are recommended to check the fees now and then during the mobile data communication.

Functions for PC Connection

Use the USB Cable for Dial-up Connections [Dial-up Connections]

You can connect the handset to a PC with the USB cable and access the Internet.

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high transmission fees.
- When accessing the Internet by connecting the handset to a PC or PDA (i.e. mobile data communication), a large amount of data is often transferred in a very short time resulting in high packet transmission fees. You are recommended to check the fees now and then during the mobile data communication.

Functions for Memory Card Backup

From  Backup Window page 12-10





Back Up/Restore Setting Data

[Relocate]

■ Backing Up Setting Data

Backup Window **Relocate**   Enter your Handset Code  **Backup**   Select a setting data item      

Enter a backup file code  Re-enter the code for confirmation  

- To select more than one item, repeat selecting an item and pressing   as many times as required.
- To select or unselect all the items, do the following.
While an item is selected,  **Mark All** or **Unmark All** 
- A backup file code is a four-digit number set at each backup and required when restoring the setting data to the handset. Write down your backup file codes and do not reveal them to others.

Restoring Setting Data

Backup Window **Relocate** → ● → Enter your Handset Code → **Restore** or **From non-3G** → ● → Select a setting data item → ● → Enter the backup file code → ● (twice) → ●

Restore Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)

[Transfer from Non-3G]

Backup Window **Transfer All** → ● → **From non-3G** → ● → Select the data to transfer → ● → [☒] → ● → Enter your Handset Code

- To select more than one data item, repeat selecting an item and pressing ● as many times as required.
- To select or unselect all the data, do the following.
While data is selected, [☑] → **Mark All** or **Unmark All** → ●
- Some data created on the SoftBank handset (PDC) may not be loaded into the handset.

Delete Backup Files

[Delete Data]

Backup Window **Transfer All** → ● → **Delete Data** → ●

Deleting All the Files

All → ● → **YES** → ● → Enter your Handset Code

Deleting Phone Book/Events/Tasks/ Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad

Select Data → ● → Select a type of data → ● → Select a file → ● → [☒] → **YES** → ●

- To select more than one file, repeat selecting a file and pressing ● as many times as required.
- To select or unselect all the files, do the following.
While a file is selected, [☑] → **Mark All** or **Unmark All** → ●

Functions for S! Addressbook Back-up

From → S! Addressbook Back-up Window page 12-13

Synchronize Phone Book Automatically [Auto Sync]

S! Addressbook Back-up Window **Sync Settings** → ● → Select the current Auto Sync setting → ● → **ON** → ● → Enter your Handset Code

Setting Synchronization Schedule

Weekly or **Monthly** → ● → Set the week/date/time → ● → [☒]

Synchronizing Automatically After Editing Phone Book

After Updated → ● → [☒]

- If you select **After Updated**, synchronization will be performed automatically after about ten minutes whenever the handset's Phone Book is edited.

View S! Addressbook Back-up History [Sync Log]

S! Addressbook Back-up Window **Sync Log** → ● → Select a log → ●

Display Settings	13-2
Incoming Event Settings	13-9
Sound Settings	13-11
Mail Settings	13-14
Internet Settings	13-19
Call Settings	13-22
Camera Settings	13-25
TV Settings	13-28
Media Player Settings	13-31
S! Appli Settings	13-32
Reset	13-33
Text Entry/Phone Book	13-34
File Transfer	13-36
Various Tools	13-38
Communications	13-44

Menus, Incoming Image Display, etc.

Start Here **Settings** **Display** **Main Screens** **▶**

Set Menu Icons/Images

Preinstalled Icons/Images	▶ <i>Deco</i> or <i>Deco</i> Original or <i>Ku-man</i> (twice)
Saved Icons/Images (Data Folder)	▶ <i>Deco</i> or <i>Deco</i> Phone Memory Gamendeco Select a Gamendeco (twice) YES
Keitaideco	▶ <i>Deco</i> or <i>Deco</i> Keitaideco (twice) YES

Set Incoming Call Image

Preinstalled Image	▶ In-Calls Voice Call or Video Call Original or <i>Ku-man</i> (twice)
Saved Image (Data Folder/Memory Card)	▶ In-Calls Voice Call or Video Call Phone Memory or Memory Card Select an image to compose the image Y
Keitaideco	▶ In-Calls Voice Call Keitaideco (twice)

Set Incoming Message Image

Preinstalled Image	▶ Messages Receiving or DeliveryCheck Original or <i>Ku-man</i> (twice)
Saved Image (Data Folder/Memory Card)	▶ Messages Receiving or DeliveryCheck Phone Memory or Memory Card Select an image to compose the image Y
Keitaideco	▶ Messages Receiving Keitaideco (twice)

- To set Keitaideco for incoming call/message image, Keitaideco must be set in advance (page 2-30).

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Display** → → **Main Screens** → ▶

Set the Download/Power-on/Power-off Screens ▶ **Download, Power On or Power Off** → → **Original or Ku-man** → (twice)

Set the Display Collectively ▶ → **Original or Ku-man** →

- If you receive a call from a person whose picture is saved to Phone Book and **Picture** under **Caller Details** is set to **ON**, the picture is displayed regardless of the incoming image settings. However, if you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret set to **ON** when Secret Mode is set to **Hide**, the incoming image is displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone, the incoming image is not displayed.

Mini Tool Settings

Select Calendar, Notepad, Weather News, information about songs during playback, or other information to appear on Mini Tool during operations or in Standby.

- To display Mini Tool, Wide View must be set to **OFF**.

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Display** → → **Mini Tool** → ▶

Configure Mini Tool Settings

Set the Default Content ▶ **Mini Tool** → → **Preset** → (twice)

Select a Content ▶ **Mini Tool** → → **Phone Memory** → → Select at item → (twice)

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Display** → → **Wide View** → ▶

Set Wide View

- ▶ Select a window you want to set → → **ON** or **OFF** →
 - If you change the **IdleScreen** setting, you also will need to reconfigure the wallpaper setting.

Set Wide View Collectively ▶ → **Wide View ON** or **Wide View OFF** →

Display Settings

Start Here

Set an Animation for Mini Tool

▶ *Mini Photo* Select a list

- Images must be saved to Images List in advance.

Save Images to Images List

▶ *Mini Photo* Select a list Select an entry Select an image (twice) (twice)

Select a Folder (Pictures)

▶ *Mini Photo* Select a folder

Set Preinstalled Images

▶ *Mini Photo*

Incoming Caller Details

Start Here

Set Caller Photo to Appear

▶ *Picture*

Set Caller Info to Appear in the External Display

▶ *Ext. Display*

- When *Picture* is set to *ON*, incoming image does not appear. However, if you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with *Secret* set to *ON* when *Secret Mode* is set to *Hide*, the caller photo is not displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone, the caller photo is not displayed.

Font Settings

The font size and color on the Display can be changed.

Start Here → Settings → Display → Font Settings →

Set the Font Size **Font Size** → Select the window you want to set → Select a font size

Set the Font Color **Font Color** → Select a font color pattern

Set the Font Size Collectively **Font Size** → → Select a font size

Lighting Settings

Start Here → Settings → Display → Lighting →

Set Power Saving **Power Saving** → Select a time

Set Keypad Lighting Time **Keypad Light** → Enter a lighting time

- Keypad Light turns on and off in conjunction with brightness of surrounding environments. If it is bright, Keypad Light will not turn on.

Set the Display Lighting **Displays** → **Lighting Time** → Enter a lighting time (0 to 60 seconds)
 Brightness → Select a level

- Select **Automatic** to adjust the brightness automatically according to surrounding environments.
- Indicators on top of the Display turn off after the Display lights up and the time set in **Lighting Time** elapses. Even if the lighting time is set to 5 seconds or less, the indicators remain displayed for about 5 seconds.

Set Media Player Lighting (During Video Playback and Streaming) **Media Player** → **Always Bright, Always Dim** or **Same as Phone**

- Since surrounding brightness is detected by the brightness sensor (page 1-3), do not block it with your fingers.

External Light Settings

Start Here → *Settings* → → *Display* → → *External Light* → ▶

Set the External Light for Notifications ▶ *Notification* → → Select a type of incoming event → → Select a color or *OFF* →

Set the External Light for Incoming Events ▶ *Incoming* → → Select a type of incoming event → → Select a color or *OFF* →

Set the External Light for Incoming Messages ▶ *Incoming* → → *Message* → → *Color* → → Select a color or *OFF* →

Set the External Light for Incoming Feeling Mail ▶ *Incoming* → → *Message* → → *Feeling* → → *ON* or *OFF* →

- Priority is given to Phone Book settings when External Light is set for each Phone Book entry.

Interface Language

Switch Language → *Settings* → → *Phone Settings* → → 言語設定 (Language) → → Select a language →

- If you select *Automatic*, the handset selects the language set in the USIM Card automatically.

Charging In Progress Image (Slideshow)

Start Here **Tools** **Photo Show**

Set Slideshow On/Off

ON/OFF **ON** or **OFF** **Settings** **Image** **Images List**
 Select a list
• Images must be saved to Images List in advance.

Save Images to Images List

ON/OFF **ON** or **OFF** **Settings** **Image** **Images List**
 Select a list Select an entry **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card**
 Select an image (twice)

Select a Folder (Pictures)

ON/OFF **ON** or **OFF** **Settings** **Image** **Select Folder**
 Select a folder

Set Preinstalled Images

ON/OFF **ON** or **OFF** **Settings** **Image** **Preset**

Set a Template

ON/OFF **ON** or **OFF** **Settings** **Templates** Select a template (twice)

Set Duration

ON/OFF **ON** or **OFF** **Settings** **Duration** Enter time

Active Window Settings

Configure settings for S! Quick News displayed in Shortcut Mode (page 2-7).

Start Here  →  → Settings →  → Display →  ▶

Select S! Quick News Information to Display ▶ Unread/Read →  → Unread Only or Show All → 

Set Ticker Speed ▶ Screen Speed →  → Select a speed → 

Start Here  → Entertainment →  → S! Quick News →  → Settings →  ▶

Set Image Display ▶ Image →  → Show or Hide → 

Restore Settings and Registered Contents of S!
Quick News to Default ▶ Reset →  → Enter your Handset Code → YES → 

Incoming Event Settings

Response Settings for Incoming Calls

Start Here **Settings** **Call Settings** **Answer Type** **▶**

Answer Incoming Calls by Opening the Handset
(Open to Talk)

Open to Talk **ON**

Set Any Key Answer

Any Keys **ON** or **OFF**

- If Any Key Answer is set to **ON**, you can answer incoming voice/video calls and S! Circle Talk calls with any of to , and , besides , and (for video call).

Answering Machine Settings

Set the Answering Machine Response Time

Settings **Call Settings** **Ans Machine** **Set Duration**
 Enter the response time

Reject Settings

Start Here **Settings** **Call Settings** **Reject Calls** Enter your Handset Code **▶**

Reject Specific Incoming Calls

Select calls to reject **ON**

Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

Specific #s **ON/OFF** **ON**

Use Reject List (Save Numbers to Reject List)

Specific #s **Reject List** **Phone Book** Select an entry Select a phone number (twice)

Enter a Number

Specific #s **Reject List** **Phone Number** Enter a phone number (twice)

Select a Number from Call Log

Specific #s **Reject List** **Call Log** Select a phone number (twice)

- If Call Barring (page 3-17) is set for incoming calls, Call Barring takes priority.

Priority Settings

Start Here  → Settings  → Priority  → 




Set Priority

▶ Select the function under operations  → Select a type of incoming event  → *Pause* or *Continue* 

Set Priority While Media Player is Playing

▶ *Media Player*  → *Continue* or *Pause* 

Set Priority While Running S! Appli

▶ *S! Appli*  → Select a type of incoming event  → *Pause Apps* or *Continue Apps* 

Set Priority During S! Circle Talk

▶ *Circle Talk*  → *Pause* or *Continue* 

Set Priority While Using TV

▶ *TV*  → *Watching* or *Recording*  → Select a type of incoming event  → *Pause* or *Continue* 

- When **Voice Call** under **Watching** or **Recording** is set to **Continue**, Answering Machine does not operate when there is an incoming voice call.

Manner Mode

Start Here **Settings** **Sounds** **Manner Mode**

Switch Manner Modes

Switch Mode Select a mode

Customize Original Mode

Original Mode Select an Original Mode you want to set Select the item to change Set each item

- For details on setting each item, see "Sound and Vibration".

Sound and Vibration

Start Here **Settings** **Sounds**

Set the Ringtone

Set a Sound Preinstalled in the Handset as the Ringtone

Incoming Select a type of incoming event **Ringtone** **Patterns** or **Melodies** Select a ringtone

Set a File Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card

Incoming Select a type of incoming event **Ringtone** **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** Select a file (twice)

- If a play point is included in the selected file, select the play point after selecting the file.
- If you use SMAF data which includes an image as a ringtone, the image may not be displayed correctly.

Set Downloaded Keitaideco Ringtone

Incoming **Voice Call** or **Message** **Ringtone** **Keitaideco** (twice)

- Keitaideco must be set in advance (page 2-30).

Set Ringtone Volume

Incoming Select a type of incoming event **Ringtone Vol.** Adjust the volume

Start Here **Settings** **Sounds** **>**

Set Ring Time

- Specify the Time by Direct Entry **Incoming** **Message, Delivery Check, Missed Call or Friend Status** **Duration** **Set Duration** Enter a ring time (1 to 99 seconds)
- Play the Specified File until the End **Incoming** **Message, Delivery Check, Missed Call or Friend Status** **Duration** **1 Cycle**

Set Vibration

- Incoming** Select a type of incoming event **Vibration** Select a pattern
- Set Vibration for Incoming Messages **Incoming** **Message** **Vibration** **Pattern** Select a pattern
- Set Vibration for Incoming Feeling Mail **Incoming** **Message** **Vibration** **Feeling** **ON** or **OFF**

Set Sound Volume

- Sound Vol.** Adjust the volume

Set Speaker Volume

- Speaker Vol.** Adjust the volume

Set Sound Effects

- Set the Original Tone Preinstalled in the Handset **Sound Effects** Select an item **Tone Type** **Original**
 - Select **Original 1** and **Original 2** for Keypad Tone.
- Set a Melody Preinstalled in the Handset **Sound Effects** Select an item **Tone Type** **Melodies**
 - Select a melody
 - You cannot set preinstalled melodies as Keypad Tone.
- Set a File Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card **Sound Effects** Select an item **Tone Type** **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** Select a file (twice)
 - You cannot set files which include an image as sound effects.
 - You cannot set files in Data Folder or memory card as Keypad Tone.

Start Here **Settings** **Sounds**

Set Sound Effects Volume

Sound Effects **Select an item** **Tone Volume** **Adjust the volume**

Set Kacha-ble

Lets you know there are missed calls or new messages by causing the handset to vibrate when you open it.

Kacha-ble **Select an item** **ON or OFF**

Set Kacha-ble Collectively



Kacha-ble **ON or OFF**

- In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual ringtone volume, sound volume and speaker volume are fixed at level 3 even if those are set higher than level 3; and the maximum volume is level 3 if the ringtone volume is set to **Ascending Volume** or **Descending Volume**.

Messaging Settings

Start Here  → Settings →  → Creating →  ▶

Add Recipients to Simple Input List

- ▶ **Simple Input** →  → Select a list item with no entry →  → Enter an address
 - For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Set Groups

- ▶ **Category** →  → Select a group →  →  → Enter addresses

Edit a Group Name

- ▶ **Category** →  → Select a group →  → **Rename** →  → Enter a group name → 

Set Send Type (To/Cc/Bcc) for Each Address

- ▶ **Category** →  → Select a group →  → Select an address →  → **To/Cc/Bcc** →  → Select **To**, **Cc** or **Bcc** → 

Set a Signature

- ▶ **Signature** →  → **Signature 1** or **Signature 2** →  → Enter a signature → 

Cancel Signature Insertion

- ▶ **Signature** →  → **No Signature** → 

Edit Signature

- ▶ **Signature** →  → **Signature 1** or **Signature 2** →  → **Edit** →  → Edit the signature → 

Set Default Mail Type

- ▶ **Default Type** →  → **SMS** or **S! Mail** → 

Display/Hide Notification When Mail Type is Switched

- ▶ **Notify Type** →  → **Show** or **Hide** → 

Outgoing Messages

Start Here  → Settings → ● → Sending → ● ▶

Set the Sending Confirmation Window

▶ Confirmation → ● → Show or Hide → ●

Set the Vibration When Sending is Confirmed

▶ Vibration → ● → ON or OFF → ●

Check Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients

▶ DeliveryCheck → ● → Ask → ●

Set the Length of Time Sent Messages are Stored on Server

▶ Expiry → ● → SMS or S! Mail → ● → Select an expiry time → ●

Set Message Priority

▶ Priority → ● → Select the priority → ●

Specify a Time Before Delivering Messages to Recipients

▶ Delivery Time → ● → Select a delivery time → ●

Save a Reply Address

▶ Reply to → ● → ON → ● → Enter an address
 • For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Edit the SMS Center Number (+819066519300)

▶ Message Ctr → ● (three times) → Input the SMS Center Number → ●

- SMS may become unavailable after changing the SMS Center Number.
- Once SMS Center Number is changed, resetting the handset will not restore default number.

Display Settings

Start Here  → Settings → ● → Display → ● ▶

Set the Font Size

▶ Font Size → ● → Select a font size → ●

Set the Scroll Unit

▶ Scroll Unit → ● → Select a scroll unit → ●

Display/Hide Address and Subject When Sending/Receiving Messages

▶ Show Addresses → ● → Enter your Handset Code → Main Display or Ext. Display → ●
 ● → Select the viewing mode → ●

Incoming Messages

Start Here  → Settings →  → Receiving →  ▶

Set New Message Retrieve Mode ▶ Retrieve Mode →  → Immediate, Phone # Only or Deferred → 

Set Automatic Display of Picture Files ▶ Auto-extract →  → Picture →  → Show or Hide → 



Set Automatic Playback of Sound Files ▶ Auto-extract →  → Sound →  → Unmute or Mute → 


Set Spam Filter ▶ Anti-Spam →  → Enter your Handset Code → Sort Messages →  → Sort or Do not Sort →  → Select Folder →  → Select a folder → 

3D Pictograms

3D Pictograms are a 3D animation display function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in the message text.

Start Here  → Settings →  → 3D Pictograms →  ▶



Set the Criteria for Displaying Received Messages with 3D Pictograms ▶ Auto Play →  → Select the criteria → 

Set the Font and Background Colors for 3D Pictograms ▶ Colors →  → Select a color combination → 

- 3D Pictograms are unavailable in S! Mail notifications, SMS with no text and Arrange Mail.
- Background playback of a music file will be paused if you use 3D Pictograms.

Message Box Settings

Do Not Auto-delete Old Messages

 → *Message Box* → → Select a folder → →  → *Auto-delete* → → *Received* or *Sent* → → *Do not Set* →

Switch Between Folder View and All Message View

 → *Message Box* → →  → *Display* → → *Folder View* → → *Folder View* or *All Messages* →

Switch Between Mixed View and Separate View

 → *Message Box* → →  → *Display* → → *Received/Sent* → → *Mixed View* or *Separate View* →

Message List Display Settings

Start Here  → *Message Box* → → Select a folder → →  → *Display* → ▶

Switch the Message List Display Mode

▶ *Display Items* → → *Subject* or *Addresses* →


Split the Message List Window

▶ *Change View* → → *Preview* or *Text Only* →

- If you select *Preview*, the Arrange settings at the beginning of message text are displayed.
- If you do not want to split the message list window, select *List Only*.

- When *Subject* is selected for Display Items, the preview window will show the other party's address. When *Addresses* is selected for Display Items, the subject will be displayed.

Message List Window Settings


Start Here  → *Message Box* → ● → Select a folder → ● ▶

Display Messages According to the Specified Criteria ▶  → *Filter* → ● → Select the criteria → ●


Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Phone Number/E-mail Address ▶ Select a message →  → *Save Sender* → ● → *Add New* → ● → Enter other items → 

Add a Phone Number/E-mail Address to a Phone Book Entry ▶ Select a message →  → *Save Sender* → ● → *Add* → ● → Select a Phone Book entry → ● → 

Switch Between Unread and Read

Switch One Message Between Unread and Read ▶ Select a message →  → *Unread/Read* → ● → *One* → ● → *To Unread* or *To Read* → ●

Switch Multiple Messages Between Unread and Read ▶  → *Unread/Read* → ● → *Select Multi* → ● → *To Unread* or *To Read* → ● → Select messages → ● → 

Switch All Messages in a Folder Between Unread and Read ▶  → *Unread/Read* → ● → *All* → ● → *To Unread* or *To Read* → ● → *Change* → ●



- Only received messages can be switched between unread and read.

Mini Tool Setting in the Message List Window

Set Mini Tool in the Message List Window  → *Message Box, Drafts* or *Unsent* → ● →  → *Display* → ● → *Wide View ON* or *Wide View OFF* → ●


- To display Mini Tool in the Message List Window, select **Wide View OFF**.


Security Settings

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai  (Press and hold) → Settings →  → Security →  ▶

Start Here for PC Site Browser  (Press and hold) →  → Settings →  → Security →  ▶

Send/Block Manufacture Number ▶ Manufacture # →  → Send or Do not Send → 

Configure Send Referer Setting ▶ Send Referer →  → Send or Do not Send → 

Enable/Disable Cookies ▶ Cookie →  → Enable, Disable or Always Ask → 

Configure Script Settings ▶ Script →  → Ask Once, Enable, Disable or Always Ask → 




Check Root Certificates ▶ Root Certif. →  → Select a root certificate → 

Set Authentication ▶ Authentica... →  → Retain Info, Per Session or Do not Retain → 

Set SSL Communication ▶ Session Info. →  → Show or Hide → 




Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai  (Press and hold) → **Settings** →  ▶

Start Here for PC Site Browser  (Press and hold) →  → **Settings** →  ▶

Delete Cache Memory ▶ *Memory Mgr.* →  → Enter your Handset Code → *Clear Cache* →  → **YES** → 

Delete All Cookies ▶ *Memory Mgr.* →  → Enter your Handset Code → *Clear Cookie* →  → **YES** → 

Clear Authentication Info ▶ *Memory Mgr.* →  → Enter your Handset Code → *Clear Auth...* →  → **YES** → 




Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Saved Pages to Default ▶ *Browser Reset* →  → Enter your Handset Code → **YES** → 

Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default ▶ *Reset Setting* →  → Enter your Handset Code → **YES** → 

Yahoo! Keitai Settings

Set the Storage Location for Downloaded Contents  (Press and hold) → **Settings** →  → *Storage* →  → *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → 

PC Site Browser Settings

Do Not Display a Warning Window When Switching Browsers  (Press and hold) →  → **Settings** →  → *Warning* →  → *PC Browser* or *Yahoo! Keitai* →  → *Hide* → 

Web Page Settings

Web Page → (page 5-3, 5-4)

Change the Font Size	Web Page →  → Settings →  → Font Size →  → Select a size → 
Change the Scroll Unit	Web Page →  → Settings →  → Scroll Unit →  → Select a scroll unit → 
Change the Text Encoding Type	Web Page →  → Settings →  → Encoding Type →  → Select a text encoding type → 
Adjust Sound Playback Volume	Web Page →  → Settings →  → Sound Volume →  → Adjust the volume → 
Do Not Download Images and Melodies from Web Pages	Web Page →  → Settings →  → Downloads →  → Images or Sounds →  → Do not Download → 
Set Security Lock	 (Press and hold) → Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History →  → Security Lock →  → Enter your Handset Code → Lock or Unlock → 
Set Security Lock for a Bookmark Folder	 (Press and hold) → Bookmarks →  → Select a folder →  → Security Lock →  → Enter your Handset Code → Lock or Unlock → 
Set Security Lock for PC Sites	 (Press and hold) →  → Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History →  → Security Lock →  → Enter your Handset Code → Lock or Unlock → 

Call Settings

International Call Settings

Start Here Settings Call Settings Call Services Intl. Calls

Change the International Code

Intl. Code Enter your Handset Code Enter a new code

Add Country Codes to the Country Number List

CountryNumber Add Enter a country name Enter a country code

Call Cost Settings

Start Here Settings Call Settings Call Time&Cost

Set Cost Display Currency

Cost Unit Settings Enter PIN2 Enter a currency (three characters) Enter the exchange rate YES

Display Call Cost After Each Call

Cost Display ON

Set Cost Limit

Cost Limit Set Max Limit Enter PIN2 (twice) Enter the maximum cost limit

- You cannot make voice and video calls if the total cost reaches the specified maximum cost limit. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Video Call Settings

Start Here **Settings** **Call Settings** **Video Call**

Set Alternative Picture

Set the Image Preinstalled in the Handset **Alt. Picture** **ON** **Preset** (twice)

Set an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card **Alt. Picture** **ON** **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** Select an image (twice)

Set Self-view Confirmation

Self-view **ON** or **OFF**

Set Incoming Image Quality

Image Quality Select the image output format

Add a Phone Number to Auto Answer List

Select a Phone Number from Phone Book **Auto Answer** **Answer List** Enter your Handset Code **Phone Book** Select an entry Select a phone number (twice)

Enter a Phone Number Directly **Auto Answer** **Answer List** Enter your Handset Code **Phone Number** Enter a phone number (twice)

Select a Phone Number from Call Log **Auto Answer** **Answer List** Enter your Handset Code **Call Log** Select an entry (twice)

Set Mute

Mute **Mute My Voice, Mute All** or **OFF**

Set Audio Output

Loud Speaker **ON** or **OFF**

Set Hold Image

Set the Image Preinstalled in the Handset **Hold Setting** **Hold on Call** or **Hold Answer** **Preset** (twice)

Set an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card **Hold Setting** **Hold on Call** or **Hold Answer** **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** Select an image (twice)

Earphone-Microphone Settings

Start Here → Settings → Call Settings → Earphone →

Save a Phone Number for Earphone-Microphone Call

Select a Phone Number from Phone Book → Earphone Call → ON/OFF → ON → Set Number → Phone Book → Select an entry → Select a phone number (twice)

Enter a Phone Number Directly → Earphone Call → ON/OFF → ON → Set Number → Phone Number → Enter a phone number (twice)

Set Auto Answer

Allows you to answer an incoming voice call without pressing the switch when the Earphone-Microphone is connected.

Auto Answer → ON/OFF → ON → Set Duration → Enter the response time

- If you set Auto Answer and the Answering Machine, Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you set Auto Answer and Voice Mail, the one with shorter response time is given priority. If the response time is the same, Voice Mail is given priority.

External Device Settings

Set the Access Point Name (APN) to Perform Packet Transmission from a PC

Settings → Call Settings → External Device → Empty → Enter the access point name (APN) → YES

Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos

Viewfinder → (page 7-3)/ Video Viewfinder → (page 7-5)

Save Pictures/Videos Automatically

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Save Settings → ● → Auto Save → ● → ON → ●

Change Storage Location

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Save Settings → ● → Storage → ● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● → Select a folder → ●

Set Image Quality

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Picture or Movie → ● → Quality → ● → Select the quality → ●

Set White Balance

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Picture or Movie → ● → White Balance → ● → Select an item → ●

Adjust Color Control

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Picture or Movie → ● → Color Control → ● → Select a color tone → ●

Set Picture/Video Effects

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Picture or Movie → ● → Effects → ● → Select an effect → ●

Adjust Flicker

E.g. under fluorescent light, you can set the frequency (Automatic/50Hz/60Hz) to reduce flicker.

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Function → ● → Flicker → ● → Automatic, 50 Hz or 60 Hz → ●

Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Function → ● → Key Shortcut → ● → ON or OFF → ●

Set the File Name

Set the Name to the Date and Time

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Save Settings → ● → File Name → ● → Date&Time → ●

Set a Name to Your Choice

Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder → → Save Settings → ● → File Name → ● → Define → ● → Enter a file name → ●

- Auto Save setting cannot be set in *Video* mode.

Settings for Taking Pictures

Viewfinder → (page 7-3) / Preview Window → (page 7-3)

Set Focus Mode

Viewfinder → → **Function** → ● → **Focus Mode** → ● → Select a focus mode → ●

Use Image Stabilization

Viewfinder → → **Resist Shake** → ● → **ON** → ●

- In Viewer position, press and hold to set or cancel image stabilization.

Change the Shutter Sound

Viewfinder → → **Function** → ● → **Shutter Sound** → ● → **Pattern 1** or **Pattern 2** → ●

Add Date Stamp

Viewfinder → → **Picture** → ● → **Date Stamp** → ● → **ON** → ● → Select a font color → ●

Set Picture Guidelines

Viewfinder → → **Function** → ● → **Grid** → ● → **ON** or **OFF** → ●

Take a Picture for Phone Book Entry

Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Picture

Preview Window → → **To Phone Book** → ● → **Add New** → ● → Create a Phone Book entry

- Set Camera mode to **Mobile** and Picture Size to **W112×H112** in advance.
- For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 2-16.

Add a Picture to a Phone Book Entry

Preview Window → → **To Phone Book** → ● → **Add** → ● → Select a Phone Book entry → ● →

- If the selected Phone Book entry contains a picture, select **YES** and press to change the picture.
- Set Camera mode to **Mobile** and Picture Size to **W112×H112** in advance.

- Image stabilization cannot be used while a Picture Mode is set.
- Image stabilization may not be effective if hand movement or subject movement is extreme.
- Taking a picture with image stabilization indoors or in other areas where lighting is insufficient can result in an overall graininess in the picture or a picture that looks like it is low resolution.
- When Camera mode is set to **Digital**, or when it is set to **Mobile** with Picture Size set to **W112×H112**, you cannot enter a date stamp.

Settings for Recording Videos

Video Viewfinder → (page 7-5) / Preview Window → (page 7-6)

Do Not Record Sound

Video Viewfinder →  → **Voice Record** → → **OFF** →

Enlarge the Video Viewfinder

Video Viewfinder →  → **ScreenDisplay** →

- Cannot be set when Video mode is set to **Video**.

Change the Start/End Sound

Video Viewfinder →  → **Function** → → **Start/End** → → **Pattern 1** or **Pattern 2** →


Set the Preview Display

Video Viewfinder →  → **Function** → → **Preview** → → **ON** or **OFF** →

- Can only be set when Video mode is set to **Video**.

Set the Recorded Video as a Ringtone Pattern


Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Ringtone Pattern

Preview Window →  → **To Phone Book** → → **Add New** → → Create a Phone Book entry

- Cannot be set when Video mode is set to **Video**.
- For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 2-16.

Add a Ringtone Pattern to a Phone Book Entry

Preview Window →  → **To Phone Book** → → **Add** → → Select a Phone Book entry → → 

- If the selected Phone Book entry contains a ringtone pattern, select **YES** and press  to change the ringtone pattern.
- Cannot be set when Video mode is set to **Video**.

TV Settings

Settings for Watching TV

Start Here  TV (Press and hold) →  Settings →  ▶

Channel List Name

▶ **Set Channels** →  → Select a channel list →  → **Rename** →  → Enter a channel list name → 

Auto-off Timer

▶ **Off-timer** →  → **30 minutes, 60 minutes, 120 minutes** or **OFF** → 

Image and Sound

Start Here  TV (Press and hold) →  ▶

Set TV Screen Brightness

▶ **Settings** →  → **Screen Settings** →  → **Brightness** →  → Select a level → 
• Select **Automatic** to adjust the brightness automatically according to surrounding environments.

Set TV Image Quality

▶ **Settings** →  → **Screen Settings** →  → **Image Quality** →  → **Fine, Normal** or **Cinema** → 

Set TV Image Sharpness

▶ **Settings** →  → **Screen Settings** →  → **Sharpness** →  → **Sharp, Soft** or **OFF** → 

Set Economy Mode

▶ **Settings** →  → **Screen Settings** →  → **Economy Mode** →  → **ON** or **OFF** → 

Set Subtitles

▶ **Subtitles** →  → **ON** or **OFF** → 

Select the Audio Output While Watching TV

▶ **Switch Audio** →  → **Main** or **Sub** → 

- Since surrounding brightness is detected by the brightness sensor (page 1-3), do not block it with your fingers.

Data Broadcast

Start Here  (Press and hold)  **Settings**  **Datacasting** 

Set Data Communication Confirmation Window

 **Start Comm.**   **Ask before** or **Do not Ask** 

Set Secure Connection Confirmation Window

 **Go to Secured**   **Ask before** or **Do not Ask** 

Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever data communication that uses encryption, a digital signature, or some other security function is performed over a secure connection (SSL).

Set Memory Access Confirmation Window

 **Access Memory**   **Ask before** or **Do not Ask** 

Delete Broadcast Data

Delete Data by Station

 **Clear Memory**   **Select a station**  **Clear**   **YES** 










Delete All Data

 **Clear Memory**    **Clear All**   **Enter your Handset Code**   **YES** 





Select Station and Delete by Entry

 **Clear Memory**   **Select a station**   **Select a memory**  **Clear**   **YES** 

Delete All Data of Station and Affiliated Stations

 **Clear Memory**   **Select a station**    **Clear All**   **Enter your Handset Code**   **YES** 

Set Location Information Send Setting

 **Send Location**   **Always Ask, Send** or **Do not Send** 

Set Whether or Not to Send the Manufacture Number

 **Manufacture #**   **Send** or **Do not Send** 

Specify whether your manufacture number (IMEI) is sent automatically as a user ID when you use a data broadcast or packet transmission.

Set the Content Storage Location

 **Storage**   **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** 

- Positioning cannot be done when Positioning Lock is set. When sending location information, select **OFF** for the Positioning Lock.
- Even if **Always Ask** or **Send** is specified for location information send setting, location information is not sent if **Do not Send** is selected for S! GPS Navi location information send setting (**LocationProperty**).

Settings for Recording Programs

Set the Storage Location for Recorded Programs

● → TV → ● → Settings → ● → File Storage → ● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ●

Settings for View/Record Timer

Start Here ● → TV → ● → Settings → ● ▶

Set the Alarm Volume for Timer Notification

▶ Notification → ● → Alarm Volume → ● → Adjust the volume → ●
• In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual alarm volume is fixed at level 3 even if it is set higher than level 3.

Set the Vibration for Timer Notification

▶ Notification → ● → Vibration → ● → ON or OFF → ●

Settings for Playing Music

Set Audio Output

 → **Output Settings** → ● → **Speaker/Earphone** or **Wireless** → ●

- When you have selected **Wireless**, do the following.
Select a paired wireless device → ●
- For details on pairing a wireless device, see page 12-5 as well as the instruction manual for the device.

Set the Wallpaper Displayed During Playback

 → **Player Image** → ● → **Original** or **Ku-man** → ●

S! Appli Settings

Settings for Operations While Running S! Appli

Start Here

Change Sound Effect Volume

Volume Adjust the volume

Set Brightness of Illumination

Lighting *Brightness* *Always Bright, Always Dim* or *Same as Phone*

Set Blinking of Illumination

Lighting *Blink* *ON* or *OFF*

Set Vibration

Vibration *ON* or *OFF*

Set Priority While Running S! Appli

Set Priority for When There is an Incoming Voice/Video Call

Calls&Alarms *Voice Call* or *Video Call* *Pause Apps* or *Continue Apps*

Set Priority for When There is an Incoming Message

Calls&Alarms *Message* *Pause Apps* or *Continue Apps*

Set Priority for When the Alarm Plays

Calls&Alarms *Alarm* *Pause Apps* or *Continue Apps*

Other S! Appli Settings

Start Here

Set Confirmation Window for Making Calls or Network Connection

Library Select an S! Appli *Security* Select a function *Blanket, Session, Oneshot* or *No*

Update S! Appli Information on the Memory Card

Card Sync *YES*

View S! Appli License Information

Information

Confirm S! Appli Root Certificates

Certification Select a certificate

Resetting the Handset to Its Default State

Start Here → *Settings* → → *Security* → → *Reset* → ►

Return All Settings to Their Defaults and Delete All Data Stored in the Handset

► *Reset All* → → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* →

Reset Settings to Default

► *Reset Setting* → → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* →

Delete All the Phone Book Entries, Data in Data Folder, and Messages

► *Clear Memory* → → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* →

Reset Confirmation Windows to Default

► *Confirmation* → → Enter your Handset Code → *YES* →





- Files or information saved in USIM Card and memory card are not restored after resetting the handset.
- **Reset All** and **Clear Memory** cannot be performed when there is data created by a Lifestyle-Appli on the IC card. Moreover, **Reset All** cannot be performed when Web restriction under Restricted Mode is set to **ON**. Delete the data created by the Life-Style Appli and set Web restriction to **OFF** before performing reset operations.
- Performing **Reset All** or **Clear Memory** deletes some preinstalled S! Appli and other contents, which cannot be restored to the same status as when the handset was purchased.

Text Entry Settings

Start Here In a text entry window →  → *Customize* →  →





Change the Input Method →  → *Input Method* →  → *Standard, Beeper, T9* or *Multi-tap* → 




Do Not Predict Words from Previously Entered Text Strings →  → *Prediction* →  → *Predict Text* →  → *OFF* → 

Do Not Predict Next Phrase from Previously Entered Phrases →  → *Prediction* →  → *Phrase* →  → *OFF* → 

Set the Custom Window →  → *Custom Window* →  → *Add to Window* →  (twice) → Enter symbols and pictographs → 

Set Display of the Custom Window

→  → *Custom Window* →  → *Display* →  → *Display* or *Do not Display* → 
• When *Display* is set, Custom Window appears in text entry windows so that you can quickly enter symbols and pictographs that are saved to Custom Window.

Set the Text Deletion Method →  → *Clear Setting* →  → *Delete* or *Back Space* → 
• Selecting *Delete* deletes the text to the right of the cursor. Selecting *Back Space* deletes text to the left of the cursor.

Reset the Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary →  → *Reset Learned* →  → *Prediction* or *Conversion* →  → *YES* → 

Phone Book Settings

Start Here → *Phone Book* → → *Settings* → ▶

Change the Default Storage Location

▶ *Select Storage* → → *Always Ask, Phone Memory, USIM or Memory Card* →

Prohibit Use of Phone Book

▶ *Phone Book Lock* → → Enter your Handset Code → *Lock* →

- If you want to use Phone Book, enter your Handset Code to temporarily release Phone Book Lock.

- If Phone Book Lock is set to **Lock**, speed dial function is unavailable for making calls.

Settings for Phone Book Groups

Edit a Group Name/Group Icon

→ *Phone Book* → → *Group* → → Select a group → → Select the group name
 → → Enter a group name → → Select a group icon → →

- Press and select **To USIM** or **To Phone** to switch between the handset and the USIM Card.

Settings for Bluetooth® Communication

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Connectivity** → → **Bluetooth** → ▶

Display Details of a Paired Bluetooth® Compatible Device

▶ **Paired Device** → → **Select a device** →

Set a Bluetooth® Compatible Device as a Trusted Device

▶ **Paired Device** → → **Select a device** → → **Trust Device** → → **ON** →

If you set a paired Bluetooth® compatible device as a trusted device, a confirmation window is not displayed and a connection is established when a connection request is received from that device.

Display Details of the Handset

▶ **Settings** → → **Details** →

Change the Name of the Handset

▶ **Settings** → → **Device Name** → → **Enter a device name** →

Communicate Using a Handsfree Device

▶ **Settings** → → **Set Handsfree** → → **Handsfree** →

- To make and receive regular calls from your handset, select **Private**.

Hide the Handset

▶ **Settings** → → **Visibility** → → **Hide** →

- If the connection is initiated by a device, on which the authentication PIN code is entered and the handset registers the device to the paired device list, a part of the device information is not displayed.

Settings for PC Connection

Use the USB Cable for Charging

ⓘ → Settings → ⓘ → Connectivity → ⓘ → USB → ⓘ → Battery → ⓘ → ON → ⓘ

- Charging is not possible while the PC or the handset is turned off.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.
- If the handset and PC are connected with the USB cable, either the PC battery or handset Battery is consumed depending on the Battery setting, regardless of whether they are communicating data.
ON: PC battery is used.
OFF: Handset battery is used.

Settings for Saving Events

Start Here → **Tools** → → **Calendar** → → → Enter basic items (page 9-4) ▶

Change Alarm Volume

▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Volume** → → Adjust the volume → → (twice) → **OK** →

- In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual alarm volume is fixed at level 3 even if it is set higher than level 3; and the maximum volume is level 3 if the alarm volume is set to *Ascending Volume* or *Descending Volume*.

Change Vibration

▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Vibration** → → Select a pattern → → (twice) → **OK** →

Set the Image to Display at the Set Time

Display the Original Image at the Set Time

▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Image** → → **Original** → → (twice) → **OK** →

Display an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card at the Set Time

▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Image** → → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → → Select an image → → to compose the image → → (twice) → **OK** →

Set the Stamp Icon

▶ **Stamp Icon** → → Select a stamp → → → **OK** →

Set Category of the Event

▶ **Options** → → **Category** → → Select a category → → → **OK** →

Set a Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL

▶ **Phone Number, Address** or **URL** → → Enter a phone number, e-mail address, or URL → → → **OK** →

Set a Link to a Related Message/Web Page/Image

▶ **Messages, Saved Pages** or **Pictures** → → Select a message, web page, or image → → → **OK** →

Set a Location

▶ **Location** → → Enter a location → → → **OK** →

Settings for Calendar

Start Here → **Tools** → → **Calendar** → → → **Settings** → ▶

Set the View Format When Opening Calendar ▶ **First View** → → Select a calendar view format →

Change the Font Color of Events ▶ **Font Color** → → Select a font color →

Lock Calendar ▶ **Calendar Lock** → → Enter your Handset Code → **Lock** →

- If you set Calendar Lock to **Lock**, the event title is not displayed when the event alarm is activated. The event details window cannot be viewed unless your Handset Code is entered.

Settings for Saving Tasks

Start Here → **Tools** → → **Tasks** → → → **Create New** → → Enter basic items (page 9-5) ▶

Change Alarm Volume ▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Volume** → → Adjust the volume → → (twice) → **OK** →

- In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual alarm volume is fixed at level 3 even if it is set higher than level 3; and the maximum volume is level 3 if the alarm volume is set to **Ascending Volume** or **Descending Volume**.

Change Vibration ▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Vibration** → → Select a pattern → → (twice) → **OK** →

Set the Image to Display at the Set Time

Display the Original Image at the Set Time ▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Image** → → **Original** → → (twice) → **OK** →

**Displaying an Image Saved in Data Folder/
Memory Card at the Set Time** ▶ **Alarm** → → **ON** → → **Image** → → **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** → → Select an image → → to compose the image → → (twice) → **OK** →

Set the Stamp Icon ▶ **Stamp Icon** → → Select a stamp → → → **OK** →

Various Tools

Start Here → ● → Tools → ● → Tasks → ● → ☒ → Create New → ● → Enter basic items (page 9-5) ▶

Set Task Priority ▶ Options → ● → Priority → ● → Select the priority → ● → ☒ → OK → ●

Set the Task Status ▶ Options → ● → Status → ● → Select the status → ● → ☒ → OK → ●

Settings for Tasks

Lock Tasks ● → Tools → ● → Tasks → ● → ☒ → Settings → ● → Tasks Lock → ● → Enter your Handset Code → Lock → ●

Time Table Settings

Start Here → ● → Tools → ● → Useful Tools → ● → Time Table → ● → ☒ → Settings → ● ▶

Set Start/End Time of a Period ▶ Set Time → ● → Select a period → ● → Enter a start time → ● → Enter an end time → ● → ☒

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Reset Time Settings to Default ▶ Reset Time → ● → YES → ●

Settings for Osai-fu-Keitai®

Start Here → ● → Tools → ● → Osai-fu-Keitai → ● → Card Settings → ● ▶

Specify Whether Functions Start Up When Handset is Held Up Before a Reader/Writer ▶ Interface → ● → Enter your Handset Code → Select a function → ● → ON or OFF → ●

Check IC Card Information ▶ IC Card Status → ●

- You cannot check the contents of an IC card that is locked.

Do Not Send a Lock Engaged Notification ▶ Remote Lock → ● → Enter your Handset Code → Mail Lock → ● → Notification → ● → Do not Send → ●

Settings for S! GPS Navi

Start Here → Tools → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings →

-
- Save a Map URL** → *Map URL Settings* → Select an unregistered item → *Edit URL* → Enter a URL
-
- Edit the Map URL Display Name** → *Map URL Settings* → Select a map URL → *Rename* → Edit the display name
-
- Edit the Map URL** → *Map URL Settings* → Select a map URL → *Edit URL* → YES → Edit the URL
- The preset map URL cannot be edited.
-
- Delete a Map URL** → *Map URL Settings* → Select a map URL → *Delete* → YES
- The preset map URL cannot be deleted.
-
- Set the Map URL** → *Map URL Settings* → Select the map URL you want to set
-
- Select the Navi Appli** → *Set Navi Appli* → Select the navigation application you want to set
- When the application becomes unavailable due to USIM Card replacement, reset the handset (Reset All) or clear entries/data (Clear Memory) (page 13-33).
-
- Lock Positioning** → *Positioning Lock* → Enter your Handset Code → ON
-
- Set Location Information Send Setting** → *LocationProperty* → Enter your Handset Code → Always Ask, Send or Do not Send
-

Alarm Settings

Start Here → **Tools** → → **Alarms** → → Select an alarm → → Enter basic items (page 9-18) → **Alarm Tone** → ▶

Change Alarm Volume

- ▶ **Volume** → → Adjust the volume → → (twice) → **OK** →
 - In Clamshell Open or Viewer position, the actual alarm volume is fixed at level 3 even if it is set higher than level 3; and the maximum volume is level 3 if the alarm volume is set to *Ascending Volume* or *Descending Volume*.

Change Vibration

- ▶ **Vibration** → → Select a pattern → → (twice) → **OK** →

Set the Image to Display at the Set Time

Display the Original Image at the Set Time

- ▶ **Image** → → **Original** → → (twice) → **OK** →

Display an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card at the Set Time

- ▶ **Image** → → **Phone Memory or Memory Card** → → Select an image → → to compose the image → → (twice) → **OK** →

World Clock Settings

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Phone Settings** → → **Clock** → → **World Clock** → ▶

Set the City by the GMT Time Difference

- ▶ **City 1 or City 2** → → → **GMT Offset** → → to select the time difference → (twice)

Set Daylight Saving Time (DST)

- ▶ **City 1 or City 2** → → → **DST ON/OFF** → → **ON** or **OFF** →

S! Information Channel Settings

Start Here ● → **Entertainment** → ● → **Info Channel** → ● ▶

Do Not Display Weather Indicator Icons in Standby ▶ **Weather** → ● → **View Settings** → ● → **Indicator** → ● → **Hide** → ●

Set Notification of Weather Forecast Updates ▶ **Weather** → ● → **View Settings** → ● → **Prompt** → ● → **Show** or **Hide** → ●

Set whether or not to notify of weather forecast updates by the Information Prompt.

Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese)

Setting 待受く一まん (Idle Screen) to **ON** displays Ku-man, a 3D animated character, in Standby. Ku-man communicates with you with the various outfits and gestures depending on the season, time of the day, and other conditions.

Set Ku-man to be Displayed in Standby ● → **設定 (Settings)** → ● → **待受く一まん (Idle Screen)** → ● → **ON** or **OFF** → ●

- If 言語選択 (Language) is set to **English** or a language other than Japanese is set for **Automatic**, or S! Quick News is selected to display new information, Ku-man cannot be displayed in Standby.

© Dora communications

Settings for S! Friend's Status

Start Here → ● → *Communications* → ● → *Friend Status* → ● →

Edit Status Settings of My Status

▶ [Y] → *Settings* → ● → *Status Setting* → ● → Select an item → ● → *Icon* → ● →
Select an icon → ● → *Label* → ● → Enter a label → ● → [E] → *YES* → ●

Set All Answer Statuses Collectively

▶ [Y] → *Settings* → ● → *Status Setting* → ● → Select an item → ● → *Set All* → ● →
Select an item → ● → [E] → *YES* → ●

Save Members to Active Window

▶ [C] to select a group → [P] to select a member → [Y] → *Active Window* → ● (twice) →
Not Registered → ●

Ignore Saving Requests from People Not in Phone Book

▶ [Y] → *Settings* → ● → *Request Reply* → ● → *Known Only* → ●

Ignore All Saving Requests

▶ [Y] → *Settings* → ● → *Request Reply* → ● → *Do not Answer* → ●

Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

● → *Settings* → ● → *Security* → ● → *IP Service* → ● → *OFF* → ●

- Before configuring the IP Service setting, you need to retrieve the network connection information (page 1-11).

USIM Card	14-2
Handling the USIM Card	14-2
USIM Codes (PIN/PIN2)	14-2
Inserting and Removing the USIM Card	14-3
Battery	14-4
Battery Installation	14-5
Software Update	14-6
Updating Software	14-6
Troubleshooting	14-7
Text Entry Keys	14-9
Standard Mode	14-9
Beeper Mode	14-10
Specifications	14-11
Main Specifications	14-11
Specifications by Function	14-12
Default Settings	14-17
Glossary	14-25
Index	14-26
Alphabetic Order	14-26
By User Action	14-35
Warranty & After Sales Service	14-40
Warranty	14-40
After Sales Service	14-40
Customer Service	14-41

Handling the USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM must be inserted to use 921T or Network services (calling, messaging, Web, etc.). Turn handset off before inserting/removing USIM Card.

- Save Phone Book entries and SMS messages on USIM Card (pages 4-19, 13-35).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not insert the USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to the USIM Card. Doing so may damage your handset.
- For details on the USIM Card, refer to the instruction manual provided with the USIM Card.



- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice. Preinstalled S! Appli may become unavailable if a different USIM Card is inserted.
- Back up USIM Card information. SoftBank is not liable for lost information.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

USIM Codes (PIN/PIN2)

For security, the USIM Card has two security codes: PIN and PIN2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

- PIN and PIN2 can be changed (page 11-5).
- The default setting is 9999 for both PIN and PIN2.

PIN

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. When PIN Settings is set to **ON**, PIN is required each time the handset is turned on.

PIN2

This is a four to eight digit security code required for changing data stored on the USIM Card, such as resetting Call Time&Cost.

PIN Lock & PUK Codes

PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated when PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times. PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) codes are required to cancel PIN Lock and PIN2 Lock. To obtain PUK and PUK2, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

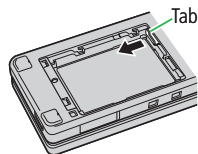
- If PUK or PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten consecutive times, the USIM Card is locked. USIM Card Lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Inserting and Removing the USIM Card

Before inserting or removing the USIM Card, turn off the handset and remove the battery.

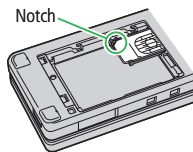
Inserting the USIM Card

- 1 Draw out the tray by pulling the tab



- 2 Place the USIM Card on the tray with the IC (page 14-2) facing up

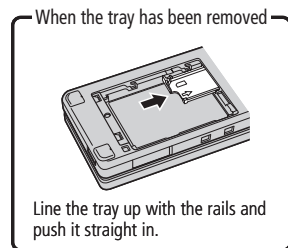
- Line up the notch on the USIM Card with the tray.



- 3 Push the tray all the way in

Removing the USIM Card

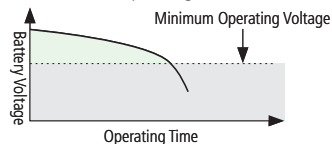
- 1 Pull the tab to draw out the tray and remove the USIM Card



- Avoid touching or scratching the USIM Card's IC. Do not force the USIM Card into or out of the handset; damage may result.
- Make sure that the USIM Card's tray is not sticking out when you insert the battery. If the tray is sticking out, the battery cannot be inserted and the USIM Card and the tray may be damaged.
- Take care not to lose the USIM Card after removing it from the handset.

Battery

- Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.
- 921T uses a lithium ion battery. Battery voltage decreases with operating time (see below).



- Extreme temperatures will reduce battery capacity and shorten the operating time. Do not use the battery in high temperatures. This may shorten battery life.
- When storing the battery separately, make sure you put it in a case, etc. and store it in a dry and cool place. This will avoid short-circuiting the battery terminal. It is recommended that you store it uncharged.
- Repeatedly charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery.
- When disposing of a used battery, insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop, a recycle shop or follow the local disposal regulations for environmental conservation.
- Be careful not to drop or apply excessive force to the battery.

Battery Drain

- The battery discharges little by little when stored for a long time even if it is not used. It self-discharges at a rate of 10 to 20% per month and about 50% per half a year.
- If the handset is used in a location with poor signal reception or left in Standby outside the service area, or if you use the Mobile Light or launch S! Appli, it will shorten the battery's operating time.

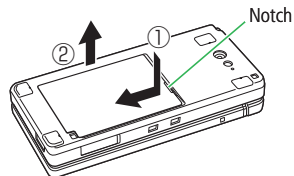
Battery Level

- The battery level on the display (page 1-5) changes with the operating time. Charge or replace it when the level is low. When the battery is about to run out (🔋), a message appears and the battery alarm tone sounds. The handset shuts down after 30 seconds.

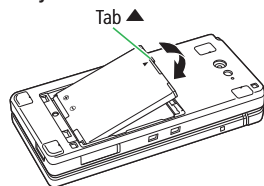
Battery Installation

- Do not remove battery while handset power is on.

- 1** Pressing down the notch, slide the battery cover (①), and lift it up (②)

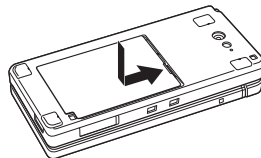


- 2** Align the battery terminal with the handset terminal and insert the battery



- Always remove the battery from the tab ▲. Otherwise the terminals may be damaged.

- 3** Replace the battery cover



Check if software on the handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network.

- Transmission fees do not apply to updates.
- There are two ways to update software:

Update now and **Schedule update.**

Update now: Update software now.

Schedule update: Set a date and time to update software so that software is updated automatically at the time you have specified.

- Software updates may take a long time.
 - Update software when the battery is fully charged. Do not remove the battery while updating.
 - Please update software in a place where the handset has a good reception, and do not change locations while updating.
 - You cannot use other functions during updates. If a program is running, software update is not available.
 - You can update software without deleting Phone Book entries, images and sounds saved in the handset. However, data may be lost or damaged if the handset is not in good condition (broken, damaged, wet, etc.). We recommend that you make backups of your important data.
- If the software update fails, you may not be able to operate your handset. In this case, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Updating Software

1 Press → **Tools** → → **Update** → → **YES** →

2 Select **Agree** → (**twice**) → **Enter your Center Access Code (page 1-14)** → → (**OK**)

- The check result is displayed. Follow the onscreen instructions.




After Software is Updated






When software is updated, the handset restarts automatically. After restarting, a confirmation window appears showing update information.

Using Schedule Update

A confirmation window for software update appears on the scheduled time. Press or leave the handset for about ten seconds to start automatic software update.

- If you are using another function on the handset on the scheduled time, software is not updated.
- If the handset indicates that it is out of the service area on the scheduled time, software is not updated.

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	Is the battery inserted properly (page 14-5)?
	Is the battery charged (page 14-4)?
Displays <i>Please check connection with your charger.</i> and cannot charge the battery.	Is there dust on the connections and contacts of the AC Charger, External Device Port or battery? Clean the connections and contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
Cannot operate the handset normally after turning it on.	Does the PIN Entry window appear? PIN Settings is set to ON , enter your PIN.
	Does  or Password Lock appear on the display? Password Lock is activated. Enter your Handset Code.
	Does USIM not inserted. Power off the phone and insert USIM. appear on the display? Turn the power off and make sure the USIM Card is inserted properly (page 14-3).
Cannot establish a connection for voice and video calls or use mail and Web functions.	Does  appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where it is difficult to receive a signal? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset and try again.
	Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-3) of your handset?
	Does  or Offline Mode appear on the display? Cancel Offline Mode (page 1-13).
Cannot make voice and video calls.	Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code?
	Does Network busy. appear on the display? The line is busy. Wait a while and try again.
	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for outgoing calls?
Cannot receive voice and video calls.	Is Reject Calls (page 13-9) set?
	Is Call Forward (page 3-10) or Voice Mail (page 3-11) set to All Calls ?
	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for incoming calls?
Cannot send messages.	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for outgoing calls?

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot receive messages.	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for incoming calls?
Calls are interrupted or disconnected.	Does  appear on the display? Are you in a location where it is difficult to receive a signal? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset.
	Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-3) of your handset?
The handset does not respond to key presses.	Does  or Password Lock appear on the display? Password Lock is activated. Enter your Handset Code.
	Does  appear on the External Display when operating with your handset closed? Hold is set. Press and hold  HOLD while your handset is closed to cancel Hold.
Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai®.	Does  appear on the display? Turn off IC Card Lock (page 9-12).
Display brightens or dims by itself.	Is the brightness sensor (page 1-3) blocked with your fingers, hair, strap or TV Antenna?
	Do your surroundings become bright or dark? Change the brightness setting (page 13-5) for the Display or move to a place where surrounding brightness level stays the same.

Standard Mode

Text Input Mode Key	Kanji (hiragana) (Double-byte)*	Single-byte katakana	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case) Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case) Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)	Double-byte numbers Single-byte numbers
	あいうえおあいうえお	アイエオアイエオ	.@-__1	.@-__1	1
	かきくけこ	カクコ	ABC2	abc2	2
	さしすせそ	サスソ	DEF3	def3	3
	たちつてとっ	タチツト	GHI4	ghi4	4
	なにぬねの	ナニヌノ	JKL5	jkl5	5
	はひふへほ	ハヒフホ	MNO6	mno6	6
	まみむめも	マミムモ	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
	やゆよやゆよ	ヤヨヤヨ	TUV8	tuv8	8
	らりるれる	ラリルロ	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
	わをんー。	ワヲンー。	~/?!0	~/?!0	0
	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons, * (dakuten), ° (handakuten), —(cho-on), , (touten), ° (kuten)	Custom, * (dakuten), ° (handakuten), —(cho-on), , (touten), ° (kuten)	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons		Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons
	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case		Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL
	Determine entered text/finish text entry				Finish text entry
	Move cursor, Insert line breaks with , Move up and down on the suggestion list with	Move cursor	Move cursor, Insert line breaks with		
	Delete entered characters				
	Display characters in opposite order				—

* While assigning a reading in hiragana to an entry in the Word List (page 2-14), you can enter only double-byte hiragana and "—" (cho-on).

Beeper Mode

Switch the input method to Beeper mode. Enter two digits to make one character. The combinations are as follows:

		Press next									
		1 あ あ	2 か か	3 き き	4 た た	5 な な	6 は は	7 ま ま	8 や や	9 り り	0 わ わ
Press first	1 あ あ	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2 か か	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3 き き	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4 た た	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5 な な	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6 は は	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7 ま ま	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&	/	/	/
	8 や や	や	(ゆ)	よ	※	#	/	/	/
	9 り り	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0 わ わ	わ	を	ん	°	°	6	7	8	9	0

- indicates upper and lower cases are available. Press **#** to switch case immediately after character entry.
- When entering in **あ** and **か**, all the characters will be single-byte.
- When entering in **さ**, **ち**, **し**, and **や**, hiragana will turn to katakana.
- When entering in **せ** and **あ**, the characters will be in lower case.

Entering Characters in Beeper Mode

Example: Entering *よし*

1 In a text entry window, press **あ** **あ** **あ** → **あ** **あ** → **あ** **あ** → **あ** **あ**

Main Specifications

921T

Frequency Range	1920 to 2170 MHz
Continuous Talk Time	Approx. 180 min. (Video call: Approx. 90 min.)
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 440 hrs
Charging Time	Approx. 120 min.
Dimensions When Closed (W×H×D)	Approx. 51×106×19.4 mm
Maximum Output	0.25 W
Weight	Approx. 132 g (with battery)

- The values above were calculated with the battery attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery is attached.
- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is closed with the External Display facing outward, the handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If the handset is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced to half or less. This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.).

- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time may be reduced to half or less if the handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or the handset is left in Standby when it is outside the service area. Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery.
- If the Mobile Light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a penlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When an S! Appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If the handset is used with the Display illuminated frequently (for Yahoo! Keitai use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- Note that the OLED display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

AC Charger (Sold Separately)

Input Voltage	100 to 240 V AC, 50/60 Hz
Charging Temperature Range	5 to 35°C

Specifications by Function

Basic Operations

Text Entry

Word List	100 words (4 words with same reading), word: 12 characters, reading: 8 characters
Clipboard	20 entries

Phone Book

Number of Entries	1,000 entries
Name	16 characters each for first and last names
Reading	16 characters each for first and last names
Phone Number	5 numbers, 32 digits
E-mail Address	5 addresses, 128 characters
Address	Postal code: 20 digits, country: 32 characters, state/city/street/additional info: 64 characters each
Job Title	32 characters
Company	32 characters
URL	128 characters
Note	256 characters
Group	20 groups, group name: 16 characters

Data Folder

Available Memory	Approx. 58 MB ^{*1} , 2,500 entries ^{**2}
File Name	32 characters

*1 Memory capacity when all files that can be deleted are deleted. Data Folder shares its memory with S! Appli Library.

**2 This number does not include S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli entries. Up to approximately 100 S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli items can be stored in Data Folder.

Others

Active Window	5 members on the Members List
Shortcuts Menu	40 entries (11 preset)

Call

Dialed, Received	20 entries each	
Answering Machine	5 messages, 30 seconds per message	
Voice Memo	60 seconds per memo	
Number Memo	5 numbers, 32 digits	
International Call Service	Country Number List	20 countries (17 preset)
Send Touch Tones	32 digits	

Messaging

Available Memory	Received	Approx. 5 MB, 2,000 messages
	Sent, Unsent	Approx. 1.5 MB, 600 messages
	Drafts	Approx. 700 KB, 60 messages
Address	To/Cc/Bcc: total 20 entries, phone number: 24 digits, e-mail address: 254 characters	
S! Mail Text	15,000 double-byte characters/ 30,720 single-byte characters	
Attachments	Approx. 300 KB (including Address, Subject, Text)	
SMS Text	70 double-byte characters/70 single-byte katakana/160 single-byte alphanumeric	
Message Box	20 folders each for Received and Sent (General folder, Folder 1 to Folder 17, Idokoro folder, Ku-man folder)	
3D Pictograms	150 characters	

Internet

Data Transfer Speed	Maximum 3.6 Mbps receiving/ maximum 384 kbps sending (in HSDPA area)
Bookmarks	50 entries
History (URL)	10 entries

TV

Recording Time	10 hours per recording
View/Record Timer	Total 5 entries
TV Links	50 entries

Camera/Picture Editing

Effective Pixels	3.24 million pixels	
File Format	Still pictures: JPEG, videos: MPEG-4/ H.263	
Picture Editing	File Format	JPEG (2.0 MB or less), PNG (1.0 MB or less)
	Picture Size	W16×H16 to W240×H400

Specifications

Camera Modes

Mode	Picture Size	Max. Zoom
Mobile	W240×H400	Approx. 5.1×
	W240×H320	Approx. 6.4×
	W144×H176	Approx. 10.7×
	W120×H160	Approx. 12.8×
	W112×H112	Approx. 12.8×
	W96×H128	Approx. 16×
Digital	W2048×H1536	—
	W2048×H1232	—
	W1600×H1200	Approx. 1.3×
	W1280×H960	Approx. 1.6×
	W640×H480	Approx. 3.2×
	W400×H240	Approx. 5.1×

Video Modes

Mode	Size	Max. Zoom	Max. Recording Time
Video	W320×H240	Approx. 3.2×	Approx. 20 min.
Video Mail	W176×H144	Approx. 3.2×	Approx. 30 sec. (Quality: Fine) Approx. 50 sec. (Quality: Normal) Approx. 60 sec. (Quality: Economy)
Short Video	W128×H96	Approx. 5.3×	Approx. 5 sec.

Media Player

Playlist	10 each for the handset and the memory card, 50 songs per playlist
My Library	50 songs
Recent	20 entries

Playable Data

- Even under the following conditions, some files may not be playable.
- Although files with bit rates other than those listed below may be playable, their operation is not guaranteed.

	File Format	Bit Rate	Sampling Frequency
921T Handset	AMR	4.75 to 12.2 kbps	8 kHz
	MPEG-4 AAC-LC	16 to 128 kbps	16 to 48 kHz
	HE-AAC	32 to 64 kbps	32 to 48 kHz

S! Appli

Available Memory on the Handset	Approx. 58 MB ^{*1} , 100 entries ^{*2}
---------------------------------	---

*1 S! Appli Library shares its memory with Data Folder.

*2 This number includes S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli entries.

Tools

Notepad	20 notepads, 256 characters per notepad
Calendar	400 events (100 events per day), from January 2, 2000 to December 30, 2015
Tasks	100 entries, from January 2, 2000 to December 30, 2015
Time Table	8 periods per day, Monday to Saturday
Dictionary	Japanese dictionary with 40,000 words, English-Japanese dictionary with 40,000 words, Japanese-English dictionary with 36,000 words
Voice Recorder	90 minutes per recording
Osaifu-Keitai	8 Lock phone numbers, 2 Mail Lock addresses, 8 entries on the Balance List
World Clock	2 cities, city name:13 characters
S! GPS Navi	20 location logs
Idokoro Mail	Recipients List: 5 entries, Areas List: 7 entries
S! Information Channel	7 History entries, 3 MB
Document Viewer	Microsoft® Word (.doc), Microsoft® Excel (.xls), Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt), PDF (.pdf)
Electronic Books	BookSurfing®: CCF (.CCF), e-Book Viewer: XMDF (.ZBK, .ZBF, .ZBS)
Barcode Reader	QR code data: 10 entries

Communication Services

S! Friend's Status

S! Friend's Status Members List	30 entries, 10 people per group
--	---------------------------------

S! Circle Talk

Participants	11 people including yourself
Talk Time	30 seconds each time
S! Circle Talk Members List	50 entries, 10 people per group

Specifications

File Transfer/Backup

Infrared

Communication System	IrMC1.1
Transmission Range	Approx. 20 cm

Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver.1.2
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Transmission Range	Within approx. 10 m* ¹
Supported Bluetooth® Profiles*²	HFP (Hands-Free Profile) HSP (Headset Profile) DUN (Dialup Networking Profile) OPP (Object Push Profile) FTP (File Transfer Profile) ³ A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) AVRCP (Audio/Visual Remote Control Profile)
Frequency Band	2.4 GHz (2.402 GHz to 2.480 GHz)
Searchable Devices	8 devices at a time
Paired Devices	20 devices

*1 Varies depending on obstacles between the communication device and the signal conditions.

*2 The specifications of Bluetooth® devices differ according to usage. There are standards for Bluetooth®.

*3 Only the server function is supported.

Melody List

The preinstalled (fixed) melodies are shown below.

- The fixed melodies cannot be set as Keypad Tone under the Sound Effects setting.

Title	Composer
Bolero	RAVEL MAURICE JOSEPH
Turandot	PUCCINI GIACOMO
Habanera	BIZET GEORGES
Oborozukiyo	OKANO TEI-ICHI
Aloha Oe	Hawaiian ballad
Traumerei	SCHUMANN ROBERT ALEXANDER
Grande Valse Brillante	CHOPIN FREDERIC FRANCOIS
Harp Concerto	HAENDEL GEORG FRIEDRICH
Old Phone	Produced by Toshiba
Flash News	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 1	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 2	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 3	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 4	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 1	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 2	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 3	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 4	Produced by Toshiba
Alarm Clock	Produced by Toshiba
Pigeon	Produced by Toshiba

Default Settings

Messaging

Function	Default Setting
Message Box	Folder View: Folder View, Received/Sent: Separate View, Display Items: Addresses, Change View: List Only, Wide View: Wide View ON, Sort Setting: None, Security Lock: Unlock, Auto-delete (Received: Set, Sent: Set)
Display	Font Size: Medium-Small, Scroll Unit: Line, Show Address (Main Display: Show All, Ext. Display: Show All)
Creating	Signature: No Signature, Default Type: SMS, Notify Type: Show
Sending	Confirmation: Show, Vibration: ON, DeliveryCheck: Do not Ask, Expiry (SMS: Not Specified, S! Mail: Not Specified), Priority: Normal, Delivery Time: Immediate, Reply to: OFF, Message Ctr: Number in the USIM Card
Receiving	Retrieve Mode: Immediate, Auto-extract (Picture: Show, Sound: Mute), Anti-Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17)
3D Pictograms	Auto Play: OFF, Colors: Color1

Yahoo! Keitai

Function	Default Setting
Settings	Font Size: Medium-Small (Yahoo! Keitai)/Extra-Small (PC Browser), Scroll Unit: 1 line, Downloads (Images: Download, Sounds: Download), Warning (PC Browser: Show, Yahoo! Keitai: Show)
	Security Manufacture #: Do not Send, Send Referer: Send, Cookie: Enable, Script: Ask Once (Yahoo! Keitai)/Enable (PC Browser), Authentica...: Per Session, Session Info.: Show
	Storage: Phone Memory

Entertainment

Function	Default Setting
S! Quick News	Auto Refresh (Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual), Image: Show
Weather	Indicator: Show, Prompt: Show
Ku-man's Room	Ku-man Data: Thumbnail View

TV

Function	Default Setting
Watching/Playing TV Program	Subtitles: ON, Switch Audio: Main, Screen Settings: (Brightness: Brightness 2, Image Quality: Normal, Sharpness: Soft, Economy Mode: OFF), Datacasting (Start Comm.: Ask before, Go to Secured: Ask before, Access Memory: Do not Ask, Send Location: Always Ask, Manufacture #: Do not Send, Storage: Phone Memory), Off-timer: OFF, File Storage: Phone Memory, Output Settings: Speaker/Earphone, Volume: VOL12

Camera

Function	Default Setting
Camera	Camera Mode: Mobile, Picture Size: (Mobile: W240 × H400, Digital: W2048 × H1536), Brush Up (Mobile: ON, Digital: OFF), Resist Shake: OFF, Self-view: OFF, Picture Mode: OFF, Multi Shots: OFF, Add Frame: OFF, Icons Display: Show, Storage: Phone Memory, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save: OFF, Quality: Fine, Effects: OFF, Date Stamp: OFF, Date Stamp Color: White w/Black, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Delay Timer: OFF, Focus Mode: Auto, Grid: OFF, Flicker: Automatic, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Key Shortcut: ON, Exposure: ± 0.0EV

Function	Default Setting	
Video	Video Mode: Video Mail, Self-view: OFF, ScreenDisplay: Normal screen, Icons Display: Show, Voice Record: ON, Storage: Phone Memory, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save (Video: ON (Fixed), Video Mail/Short Video: OFF)	
	Quality	Video: Normal, Video Mail: Normal, Short Video: Economy (Fixed)
		Effects: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Delay Timer: OFF, Encode: MPEG4, Flicker: Automatic, Start/End: Pattern 1, Key Shortcut: ON, Preview: ON, Exposure: ±0.0EV
Scan Data	Exposure: ±0.0EV	

S! Appli

Function	Default Setting
Settings	Screensaver: OFF, Start Time: 3 sec, Calls&Alarms (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Volume: Level 3, Lighting (Brightness: Same as Phone, Blink: ON), Vibration: ON

Tools

Function	Default Setting	
Alarms	Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Image: Original, Repeat: Once, Snooze: OFF	
Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%	
Calendar	Create Event	Set Alarm: OFF, Show/Hide: Show, Repeat for: Do not Repeat, Category: No Category
	Set Holiday (Sunday: Red, Monday to Friday: Black, Saturday: Blue)	
	Reminder	Reminder: OFF, Schedule for: Today, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Repeat: Once
	Calendar Lock: Unlock, First View: Monthly, Font Color: White w/Black	
Tasks	New Task	Set Alarm: OFF, Show/Hide: Show, Priority: Normal, Status: Not Completed
	Change View: All View, Sort by: Deadline	
	Reminder	Reminder: OFF, Schedule for: Today, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Repeat: Once
	Tasks Lock: Unlock	

Function	Default Setting
Time Table	BG Color: OFF, Font Color: White w/Black
Kitchen Timer	10 sec
Voice Recorder	SelectStorage: Phone Memory
Photo Show	ON/OFF: OFF, Templates: Bubble, Image: Preset, Duration: 60 min
Osaifu-Keitai (Card Settings)	IC Card Lock: OFF, Mail Lock (ON/OFF: OFF, Notification: Send, Address: To Sender), Call Lock (ON/OFF: OFF, Missed Count: 3 times), Interface (Browser, Messaging, Vibration, Notification, S! Appli): ON, Display Balance: OFF
S! GPS Navi	Map URL Settings: NAVITIME (http://map.navitime.jp/), Set Navi Appli: NAVITIME, Positioning Lock: OFF, LocationProperty: Always Ask

Data Folder

Function	Default Setting
Data Folder	Change View (View Type: Thumbnail 3×3/Thumbnail 5×5 (My Pictograms Folder only), Sort by: From Latest), Security Lock: OFF

Default Settings

Media Player

Function	Default Setting
Audio	Sort by: (All Music: Title: A to Z, Artist: Title: A to Z, Album: Track No., Folder: Title: A to Z), Output Settings: Speaker/Earphone, Player Image: Original, Play Mode: All, Surround: OFF, Equalizer: Flat, Voice Cancel: OFF
Videos	Display Link: ON

Communications

Function	Default Setting
Friend Status	My Status: Offline, Request Reply: Always Answer, Answer Status: (Calls: Answer OK, Mail: Reply OK, S! Circle Talk: Join OK), Status Setting: ごきげん (Good mood)
Circle Talk	Loud Speaker: ON

Phone Book

Function	Default Setting
Phone Book	Search Mode: Tab/Reading
Options	ExternalLight: Same as Phone, Ringtone Vol.: Same as Phone, Ringtone: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone, Duration: Same as Phone, MessageFolder: None, Secret: OFF, Ext. Display: Same as Phone
Options (Group)	ExternalLight: Same as Phone, Ringtone Vol.: Same as Phone, Ringtone: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone, Duration: Same as Phone, MessageFolder: None
Addr. Bkup	Auto Sync: OFF, Sync Type: Synchronize
Settings	Select Storage: Phone Memory, Phone Book Lock: Unlock

Settings

Sounds

Function	Default Setting	
Kacha-ble	MissedCall: ON, Messaging: ON, Delivery: ON, Missed Call Notification: ON, Missed CT: ON, Status: ON	
Normal Mode	Incoming	Ringtone: Pattern 1, Ringtone Vol.: Level 3, Vibration (Pattern): OFF, Feeling: ON, Duration: 5 sec
	Sound Vol.: Level 3, Earpiece Vol.: Level 5, Speaker Vol.: Level 5, Battery: ON	
	Sound Effects	Tone Type: Original (Keypad Tone: Original 1), Tone Volume: Level 1
Manner Mode	Manner Mode: Unset, Switch Mode: Silent	
	Silent	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling: Same as Normal Mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal Mode
	Alarms	Ringtone Vol. (Except alarm volume): Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms (Alarms: Same as Normal Mode, Alarm Volume: Same as Normal Mode, Vibration: Same as Normal mode), Feeling: Same as Normal Mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal Mode

Function	Default Setting	
Manner Mode (Continued)	Drive	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: OFF, Feeling: OFF, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON
	Original 1 to 3	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling: ON, Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON

Display/Idle Screen (Ku-man)

Function	Default Setting
Idle Screen	Wallpaper: Preset (Picture), Others: 1-line Digit, Active Window: ON (Always), Ext. Display: Icon+Clock
Main Screens	Deco (Icons): Original, Deco (Windows): Original, In-Calls: Original, Messages: Original, Download: Original, Power On: Original, Power Off: Original
Mini Tool	Mini Tool: Preset
Caller Details	Picture: ON, Ext. Display: ON
Wide View	IdleScreen: ON, Create Msg: ON, Msg Window: ON, Msg Lists: ON
Font Settings	Font Size (General: Medium, Messaging: Medium-Small, Mobile Web: Medium-Small, PC Browser: Extra-Small, Text Entry: Medium-Small), Font Color: Pattern 4

Default Settings

Function	Default Setting	
Lighting	Power Saving: 15 sec, Keypad Light: 5 sec, Displays (Lighting Time: 5 sec, Brightness: Automatic), Media Player: Always Bright	
External Light	Notification	MissedCall: Garnet, Messages: Emerald, DeliveryCheck: Sapphire, Missed Call (Voice Mail service): Amethyst, Missed CT: Blue Topaz, Friend Status: Citrine
	Incoming	Voice Call: Garnet, Video Call: Emerald, Message (Color: Sapphire, Feeling: ON), DeliveryCheck: Amethyst, Missed Call (Voice Mail service): Citrine, Circle Talk: Blue Topaz, Friend Status: Citrine
Idle Screen (Ku-man)	OFF	

Phone Settings

Function	Default Setting
Clock	12hour/24hour: 24 hour, World Clock (City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST ON/OFF: OFF)
Sub Menu View	Show
言語選択 (Language)	日本語 (Japanese)
Navigation Keys	☎: Active Window, ☎: Phone Book, ☎: Dialed Numbers, ☎: Received Calls
Side Key	Torch (penlight)

Security

Function	Default Setting
Password Lock	Phone Closed: OFF, Power Saving: OFF, Power Off: OFF
Function Lock	Phone Book: Unlock, Calendar: Unlock, Tasks: Unlock, Call Log: Unlock, Message Log: Unlock
Secret Mode	Hide
Anti-Spam	Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17
Change Password	9999
IP Service	ON
Restricted Mode	Web: OFF
Hold	Unset

Call Settings

Function	Default Setting
Intl. Calls	Intl. Code: 0046010
	CountryNumber Japan (81), UK (44), Italy (39), Switzerland (41), Spain (34), Germany (49), Portugal (351), Netherlands (31), France (33), Monaco (377), USA (1), Sweden (46), Australia (61), China (86), Hong Kong (852), Taiwan (886), South Korea (82)
Ans Machine	Setting: OFF, Set Duration: 18 sec
Earphone	Auto Answer (ON/OFF: OFF, Set Duration: 10 sec), Earphone Call: OFF
Answer Type	Open to Talk: OFF, Any Keys: OFF
Video Call	Alt. Picture: OFF, Image Quality: Standard, Hold Setting (Hold on Call: Preset, Hold Answer: Preset), Mute: OFF, Loud Speaker: ON, Auto Answer: OFF, Self-view: OFF
Reject Calls	Specific #: OFF, Unknown: OFF, Withheld: OFF, Payphone: OFF, Unavailable: OFF
Offline Mode	OFF
Show My Number	OFF

Connectivity

Function	Default Setting
Bluetooth	ON/OFF: OFF, Settings (Visibility: Show, Set Handsfree: Private)
Infrared	ON/OFF: OFF
USB	Connection: Always Ask, Battery: ON

Priority

Function	Default Setting
Mid-operation	Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue
Video	Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue
Media Player	Pause
Voice Recorder	Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue
S! Appli	Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps
Circle Talk	Continue
TV	Watching Voice Call: Pause, Video Call: Pause, Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue, Alarm: Pause
	Recording Voice Call: Continue, Video Call: Continue, Message: Continue, DeliveryCheck: Continue, Alarm: Continue

Text Entry

Function	Default Setting
Custom Window	Display: Display
Clear Setting	Delete
Input Method	Standard
Font Size	Medium-Small
Prediction	Predict Text: ON, Phrase: ON

Active Window

Function	Default Setting
ON/OFF	ON (Always)
Templates	News
Auto Refresh	Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual
Unread/Read	Show All
Screen Speed	Neutral

Glossary

Terminology	Description
3G	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system.
USIM Card	Use the handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Phone Book entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM Card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
USIM PIN	A number required for using the USIM Card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
S! Mail	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.

Terminology	Description
Cache	The location in the handset for temporarily storing the data of displayed Web pages, etc.
S! Appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of S! Appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.
FeliCa	Contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. It allows data to be exchanged by simply holding an IC card up to a reader device. The 921T handset is capable of managing multiple types of data, so it can be used for such things as e-money and a membership card.
HSDPA	Short for High-Speed Downlink Packet Access, HSDPA is a 3G mobile telephone communication protocol that provides faster W-CDMA data communication speeds.

Alphabetic Order

Numeric

- 12hour/24hour 1-12
- 3D Pictograms 13-16

A

- AC Charger 1-8, 14-11
- Access Memory 13-29
- Account Name 4-3
- Active Window 2-7
 - Change Icon 2-26
 - Check Member Status 2-26
 - Contact Members 2-8
 - Edit Members List 2-26
 - My Status Display 2-26
 - ON/OFF Settings 2-25
 - Save People to Members List 2-8
 - Templates 2-25
- Add Address 4-13
- Add Frame (Camera) 7-7
- Add Frame (Edit Picture) 7-11
- Add Stamp (Edit Picture) 7-12
- Add Text (Edit Picture) 7-11
- Address Library 2-12
- Alarms 9-18, 9-33
 - Alarm Tone 13-42
- Alphanumerics 2-11
- Alternative Picture 3-15, 13-23

- Animation 2-6
- Answer Type 13-9
- Answering Machine 3-5
 - Delete Recorded Messages 3-13
 - Response Time 13-9
- Anti-Spam 13-16
- Any Key Answer 13-9
- Areas List 9-16
 - Delete 9-32
- Arrange 4-5, 4-15
- Attachments 4-4
 - Save 4-19
- Audio Output Setting (Video Call) 13-23
- Audio Output Switching (During Call)
 - S! Circle Talk 10-8
 - Video Call 3-15
 - Voice Call (Handsfree Call) 3-14
- Authentication (Internet) 13-19
- Authentication PIN Code (Bluetooth Passkey) .. 12-4
- Auto Answer (Earphone-Microphone) .. 13-24
- Auto Answer (Video Call) 3-13
- Auto Answer List (Video Call) 13-23
- Auto Focus Lock 7-10
- Auto Play (Attachments) 4-14
- Auto Save 13-25
- Auto-delete 4-10, 13-17
- Auto-extract 13-16
- Available Memory 14-12, 14-13, 14-14

B

- Background Play (Multitask) 8-10
- Backup
 - Relocate 12-15
 - S! Addressbook Back-up 12-12
 - Transfer All 12-10
- Barcode Reader 9-26
- Battery 1-8, 14-4
 - Charge 1-8, 13-37
 - Installation 14-5
- Battery Level 1-5, 1-6, 14-4
- Beeper Mode 14-10
- Bluetooth® 12-4
 - Delete Device 12-14
 - Details 13-36
 - Device Name 12-14, 13-36
 - Dial-up Connections 12-14
 - Disconnect 12-14
 - ON/OFF 12-5
 - Paired Device List 12-5
 - Search Device 12-5
 - Send a Picture/Video After Shooting 7-11
 - Send My Details 12-14
 - Set Handsfree 13-36
 - Transfer Files 12-6
 - Trust Device 13-36
 - Visibility 13-36
- Bookmarks 5-6
 - Create Folder 5-9
 - Delete 5-9

Edit	5-9
Move	5-9
Send via Mail	5-9
BookSurfing®	9-25
Brightness	13-5, 13-28
Brightness Sensor	1-3, 13-5, 13-28
Browser Reset	13-20
Browser Settings	13-19
Brush Up	7-10

C

Calculator	9-20
Currency Conversion	9-33
Calendar	9-4
Calendar Lock	13-39
First View	13-39
Set Holiday	9-28
Call	3-2
Call Barring	3-17
Call Barring Service Code	1-14
Change	3-18
Call Forward	3-10
Call Lock	9-12
Lock Phone Number	9-12
Lock/Cancel	9-13
Missed Count	9-31
ON/OFF	9-13
Call Log	3-9
Call Log Lock	3-15
Call Time & Cost	3-16, 13-22

Call Waiting	3-17
Caller Details	13-4
Camera	1-3, 7-2
Settings	13-25
Camera Modes	7-3
Camera/Video Indicator	1-3
Capture (TV)	6-8
Card Reader Mode	12-8, 12-9
Category	13-14
Center Access Code	1-14
Change Bright (Edit Picture)	7-12
Change View (Switch Browser)	5-7
Channel Selection	6-4
Channel Settings	6-3, 6-8
Charge Battery	1-8
AC Charger	1-8
Desktop Cradle	1-9
In-Car Charger	1-9
PC Connection	13-37
Charger Terminal	1-3
Charging In Progress Image	13-7
Charging Indicator	1-3
Charging Time	14-11
Clamshell Open Position	1-4, 7-2
Clear Authentication	13-20
Clear Cache	13-20
Clear Field	4-14
Clear Memory	13-33
Clear Memory (Data Broadcast)	13-29
Clear Setting	13-34
Clock Type Setting	2-7

Color Control	13-25
Communication Mode (USB Connection) ..	12-8
Confirmation Window	
Data Broadcast	13-29
Mail	13-15
Reset	13-33
Content Key	2-20
Backup	12-10
Continuous Standby Time	14-11
Continuous Talk Time	14-11
Conversion Prediction	2-26
Converter	9-20, 9-33
Cookie	13-19, 13-20
Copy (Characters)	2-12
Cost Limit	13-22
Country Number List	13-22
Custom Window	13-34
Customize Handset Address	4-3
Cut (Characters)	2-12

D

Dakuten (°)/Handakuten (°)	2-10
Data Broadcast Mode	6-4
Data Broadcasts	6-2
Data Folder	2-20
Available Memory	2-30, 14-12
Datacasting	13-29
Date & Time	1-12
Date Stamp	13-26
Daylight Saving Time	9-19, 13-42

Default Settings 14-17
 Delay Timer 7-7
 Delete (Characters) 2-12
 Delete Messages 4-17, 4-18
 Delivery Check 4-15, 13-15
 Delivery Report 4-18
 Delivery Time 4-15, 13-15
 Desktop Cradle 1-9
 Dialed Numbers 3-9
 Delete Call Log Records 3-15
 Redial 3-12
 Save to Phone Book 2-18
 Dial-up Connections 12-14, 12-15
 Dictionary 9-20
 Digital Mode 7-3
 Display 1-5
 Display Balance 9-31
 Display Characters in Reverse Order 2-10
 Display Positions 1-4
 Display Settings 2-6, 2-25, 13-2
 Document Viewer 9-24
 Drafts 4-15

E

Earphone Microphone Jack 1-3
 Earphone-Microphone Answer 3-13
 Earphone-Microphone Call 3-13
 Earphone-Microphone Settings 13-24
 Earpiece 1-3

Earpiece Volume (During Call)
 S! Circle Talk 10-8
 Video Call 3-7
 Voice Call 3-4
Earpiece Volume Setting 3-12
e-Book Viewer 9-25
Economy Mode 13-28
Edit Picture 7-8
Edit Text 2-12
 Message 4-14
Effects 7-9, 13-25
Electronic Books 9-25
E-mail Address/URL Extensions 2-12
Emergency Call Location Notification 3-3
Emergency Calls 3-3
Emoticons 2-11
 Save Original Emoticons 2-27
Encode 7-11
Encoding Type 13-21
Equalizer 8-10
Events 9-4
 Alarm 9-4, 13-38
 Category 13-38
 Check 9-5
 Delete 9-5, 9-30
 Edit 9-29
 Font Color 13-39
 Reminder 9-28
 Repeat for 9-29
 Set a Link to Related Information 13-38
 Show/Hide 9-29

 Stamp Icon 13-38
Expiry 4-15, 13-15
Exposure 7-3, 7-6
External Device Port 1-3
External Device Settings 13-24
External Display 1-6
External Light 1-3, 2-29, 13-6

F

Feeling Mail 4-5
File Name (Camera) 13-25
Files
 Attach 4-4
 Copy 2-32
 Delete 2-32
 Details 2-30, 8-11
 Move 2-22
 Rename 2-31
 Sort by 2-31, 8-10
 Use 2-30
Filter (Mail) 13-18
Flicker 13-25
Focus Mode 7-10, 13-26
Folders
 Copy Folder 2-32
 Create Folder 2-21, 5-9
 Delete Folder 2-32
 Move Folder 2-32, 4-19
 Rename Folder 2-31, 4-17
Font Color 4-15, 13-5, 13-39

Font Settings	13-5
Font Size	
Arrange Mail	4-5
Display Settings	13-5
Internet	13-21
Mail	13-15
Text Entry	2-27
Format Card	2-24
Forward Mail	4-16, 4-18
Function Lock	11-4

G

Gamendeco	13-2
GMT Offset	13-42
Grid	13-26
Group (Mail)	4-13, 4-14, 13-14
Group (Phone Book)	2-16, 2-29, 13-35

H

Handset Code	1-14
Change	11-2
Handset Parts & Functions	1-2
Handsfree (Bluetooth®)	13-36
Handsfree Call	3-14
Handstrap Hole	1-3
Hiragana to Alphanumeric/Katakana Conversion ..	2-10
History (Internet)	5-3, 5-4
Delete	5-7
Hold	1-3, 11-3

Hold Answer	3-13
Hold Call	3-14
Hold Setting (Video Call)	13-23

I

IC	14-2
IC Card	9-10
Card Settings	9-12, 13-40
IC Card Lock	9-12
Ichi Navi	9-14
Icons	
Bluetooth® Compatible Devices	12-5
Display	1-5
External Display	1-6
Message List	4-10
Text Input Mode	2-9
TV Links	6-8
Video Call	3-7
Idle Screen (Ku-man)	13-43
Idokoro Mail	9-16
Image Mode	6-5
Image Quality (Camera)	13-25
Image Quality (TV)	13-28
Image Quality (Video Call)	3-15, 13-23
Image Stabilization	13-26
In-Car Charger	1-9
Incoming Call Image	13-2
Incoming Message Image	13-2
Incoming Messages	4-8
Infinity	7-10

Information Prompt	1-7
Infrared	12-2
Authentication Password	12-2
Dial-up Connections	12-14
ON/OFF	12-2
Send a Picture/Video After Shooting	7-11
Send My Details	12-14
Transfer Files	12-2
Infrared Port	1-3, 12-2
Input Method	13-34
Insert	2-27, 4-13
Internal Antenna	1-3
International Call	3-5
International Code	13-22
Internet	5-2
Settings	13-19
Internet Security Code	1-14
Register/Change	11-5
IP Service	13-44

J

Jump	5-9
-------------------	-----

K

Kacha-ble	13-13
Keitaideco	2-3, 2-6, 2-30, 13-2, 13-11
Key Guide	
Camera	7-3, 7-6
Media Player	8-5, 8-6
TV	6-8, 6-9

Key Shortcut 13-25
 Keypad 1-3, 2-4, 6-4
 Keypad Light 13-5
 Keypad Lock 11-3
 Kitchen Timer 9-21
 Ku-man Mail 9-27
 Ku-man's Room 9-27

L

Landscape View Operations 2-3
 Language (言語選択) 13-6
 License Information (S! Appli) 13-32
 Lifestyle-Appli 9-10
 Display Balance 9-31
 Lighting 13-5, 13-32
 Lighting Time 13-5
 Line Break 2-26
 Locate Me 9-14
 Location Information Send Setting 13-29, 13-41
 Location Logs 9-32
 Location Mail 9-32
 Lock Password 9-12
 Lock Phone Number 9-12
 Loud Speaker (Video Call) 13-23
 Lower Case 2-10

M

Macro 7-10
 Mail Settings 13-14
 Creating 13-14
 Display 13-15
 Receiving 13-16
 Sending 13-15
Mail Lock 9-12
 Address 9-31
 Lock Password 9-12
 Lock/Cancel 9-13
 Notification 13-40
 ON/OFF 9-13
Mail Type 4-14
 Default Type 13-14
Mailbox Volume 4-17
Main Menu 2-2, 2-3
 Reset Options 2-25
Main Screens 13-2
Manner Mode 1-13
 Customize Original Mode 13-11
 Switch Mode 13-11
Manufacture # 13-19, 13-29
Map URL Settings 13-41
Media Player 8-2
 Lighting 13-5
 Priority 13-10
Melody List 14-16
Memory Card 2-23
Memory Card Backup 12-10
 Relocate 12-15
Memory Card Slot 1-3
Memory Status 2-28, 2-30
Message Box 4-10
 Settings 13-17

 Message Details 4-19
 Message Folder 2-29
Message List 4-10
 Settings 13-17, 13-18
Messaging 4-2
Microphone 1-3
Mini Photo 13-4
Mini Tool 13-3, 13-18
Missed Call Notification 3-11
Mobile Light 1-3, 7-3, 7-6
Mobile Mode 7-3
Mosaic (Edit Picture) 7-12
Multi Selector xi, 1-3, 2-4
 Reset 2-25
Multi Shots 7-7
Multiparty Call 3-17
Music File Playback Window 8-4
Music Player 8-5
Mute 3-13, 13-23
My Details 3-3, 3-12, 12-14
My Library 8-11
My Locations 9-32
My Status 10-4

N

Name Conversion 2-26
 Navi Appli 9-14, 13-41
 NAVI Settings 13-41
 Notepad 9-8

Delete	9-8, 9-30
Edit	9-30
Notification (S! Friend's Status) ..	10-5, 10-9
Number Memo	3-14

O

Offline Mode	1-13
Off-timer	13-28
One Seg	6-2
Open to Talk	13-9
Osaifu-Keitai®	9-10
Output Setting (Media Player)	13-31
Output Settings (TV)	6-8
Overlay (Edit Picture)	7-9

P

Page Details	5-8
Page Search	5-7
Password Lock	11-3
Paste (Characters)	2-12
PC Connection (USB Connection)	12-8
Charge Battery	13-37
Dial-up Connections	12-15
PC Files	9-24
PC Site Browser	5-4
Phone Book	2-15
Call from	2-18
Change View	2-29
Copy	2-29
Delete	2-30

Edit	2-29
Group	2-29, 13-35
Move	2-29
New Entry	2-16
Picture	2-17, 13-4, 13-26
Search Mode	2-19
Sort by	2-29
Phone Book Lock	13-35
Photo Show	13-7
Phrase Prediction	2-27, 13-34
Pictographs	2-11
Picture Mode	7-10
Picture Size (Camera)	7-10, 14-14
Picture Size (Edit Picture)	7-9
PIN Lock	11-5, 14-2
PIN Settings	11-3
PIN/PIN2	14-2
Change	11-5
Play Mode	8-10
Player Image	13-31
Playlist	8-7
Add Tracks	8-11
Change Order	8-11
Copy	8-11
Create	8-7
Delete	8-11
Play	8-7
Remove Tracks	8-11
Rename	8-7
Positioning Lock	13-41
Power On	1-11

Power Saving	13-5
Power-off Screen	1-11, 13-3
Power-on Screen	13-3
Prediction	2-26, 13-34
Preview	13-27
Priority (Mail)	4-16, 13-15
Priority Settings	13-10, 13-32
Program Guide	6-5
Protect (Mail)	4-17
PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) Code ..	11-5, 14-2

Q

QR Codes	9-26
-----------------------	-------------

R

Reader/Writer	9-11
Received Calls	3-9
Call from	3-12
Delete Call Log Records	3-15
Save to Phone Book	2-18
Recent	8-10
Recipients List	9-16
Delete	9-32
Reconvert	2-27
Record Videos	7-5
Settings	13-25, 13-27
Record/Play Programs (TV)	6-6
Recorded Programs (TV)	6-6
Delete	6-9

File Storage	13-30
Rename	6-9
Reject Calls	3-13, 13-9
Reload Page	5-7
Relocate	12-15
Remaining Time (TV)	6-9
Reminder	9-28
Replace Text	2-27
Reply to	
Activate	4-16
Messages	4-9
Save an Address	13-15
Reset All	13-33
Reset Learned	13-34
Reset Setting	13-33
Internet	13-20
Restricted Mode (Web)	11-5
Retrieve Mail	4-16
Retrieve Mode	13-16
Retrieve Network Information	1-11
Ring Time	2-29, 13-12
Ringtone	2-17, 13-11
Ringtone Volume	2-28, 3-4, 13-11
Root Certificates	13-19, 13-32
Rotate Image (Edit Picture)	7-12

S

S! Addressbook Back-up	12-12
Auto Sync	12-16
Sync Log	12-16

Synchronization Type	12-13
S! Appli	8-8
Delete	8-12
Details	8-12
Download	8-8
End	8-8, 8-9
Move	8-12
Pause	8-8
Resume	8-8, 8-9
Screensaver	8-12
Start	8-8
S! Appli Root Certificates	13-32
S! Appli Settings	13-32
S! Circle Talk	10-6
Add Members	10-7
Answer	10-8
Call Another Member	10-8
Create a Group	10-7
Delete	10-10
Edit Group	10-10
Initiate	10-7
S! Friend's Status	10-3
Add Members	10-4, 10-9
Call/Send Mail	10-9
Change Group	10-9
Check Member Status	10-5
Deletion Request	10-9
My Status	10-4
Notification	10-5, 10-9
Rename	10-9
Request Reply	13-44

Save Members to Active Window	13-44
Saving Failed	10-5
Saving Request	10-5
Status Setting	13-44
Status Update	10-9
S! GPS Navi	9-14
Location Logs	9-32
Location Mail	9-32
My Locations	9-32
S! Information Channel	9-23
Get Latest	9-34
History	9-34
Weather Indicator	9-23
S! Loop	10-2
S! Mail	4-4
S! Quick News	9-22
Auto Refresh	9-33
Check Updates	2-8
Delete	9-34
Image	13-8
Reset	13-8
Ticker Speed	13-8
Unread/Read	13-8
S! Town	10-2
Saved Pages	5-6
Delete	5-9
Rename	5-9
Scan Data	9-26
Screen Display	13-27
Screen Settings (TV)	13-28
Script	13-19

Scroll Unit	13-15, 13-21	Single Kanji Conversion	2-26	Surround	8-10
Search Mode (Phone Book)	2-19	Slideshow	2-21	Switch Audio (TV)	13-28
Search Time	8-10	SMS	4-6	Switch Windows (Video Call)	3-15
Secret	2-17	Move	4-19	Symbols	2-10
Secret Mode	11-4	SMS Center Number	13-15		
Secure Remote Lock	11-4	Snooze	9-18	T	
Security	5-2, 13-19, 13-32, 13-33	Softkeys	xi, 1-3	Take Pictures	7-3
Security Lock	2-22, 4-17, 13-21	Software Update	14-6	Settings	13-25, 13-26
Self-delete	4-16	Sort by (Mail)	4-19	Tasks	9-5
Self-portrait Position	1-4, 7-2	Sort Setting	4-11	Alarm	9-5, 13-39
Self-view	7-3, 7-6, 13-23	Sound Effects	13-12	Check	9-6
Send Picture (Video Call)	3-15	Sound Volume	13-12, 13-21	Delete	9-6, 9-30
Send URL	5-7	Sounds	13-11	Edit	9-29
Server Certificate	5-8	Space	2-26	Priority	13-40
Server Operations	4-16	Speaker	1-3	Reminder	9-28
Set as Main City	9-19	Speaker Volume	13-12	Show/Hide	9-29
Sharpness	13-28	Specifications	14-11	Stamp Icon	13-39
Short Video Mode	7-5	Speed Dial	3-5	Status	13-40
Shortcuts Menu	2-5	SSL/TLS	5-2	Tasks Lock	13-40
Arrange Icons	2-25	Standby	1-11, 2-6	Templates (Mail)	4-5
Change Icon	2-25	Start/End Sound	13-27	Save	4-15
Delete	2-25	Storage Location		Switch	4-15
Edit Title	2-25	Camera	13-25	Text Copy	4-19, 5-7
Show My ID	3-12	Data Broadcast	13-29	Text Entry	2-9, 2-26
Show My Number	3-12	Internet	13-20	Beeper Mode	14-10
Shutter Sound	13-26	Phone Book	13-35	Settings	13-34
Side Key	2-4	Recorded Programs (TV)	13-30	Text Entry Keys	14-9
Signal Strength	1-5, 1-6	Voice Recorder	9-31	Text Input Modes	2-9
Signature	13-14	Streaming	8-3	Time Table	9-7
Simple Input	4-13, 13-14	Sub Menu View	2-4	Copy	9-30
Simple Notice	9-17	Subtitles	6-4, 13-28		

Delete	9-7, 9-30
Settings	13-40
Timer	6-7
Check/Edit/Delete	6-9
Notification	13-30
Program Guide	6-9
Timer Results	6-9
To Group	4-14
To Playlist	8-11
To/Cc/Bcc	4-13
Touch Tones	3-14
Troubleshooting	14-7
Trust Device	13-36
TV	6-2
Settings	13-28
TV Antenna	1-3, 6-3
TV Links	6-8

U

Undo	2-13
Unread/Read (Mail)	13-18
Unsent Messages	4-19
URL History	5-7
USB Connection (PC Connection)	12-8
USIM Card	14-2
USIM Lock	11-5

V

Vibration	2-29, 13-12, 13-15, 13-32
Video Call	3-7

Video Call Settings	13-23
Video File Playback Window	8-6
Video Mail Mode	7-5
Video Modes	7-5
View Type (Data Folder)	2-30
Viewer Position	1-4, 7-2
Visibility	13-36
vObjects	2-31
Voice Call	3-4
Call from Phone Book	2-18
Voice Cancel	8-10
Voice Mail	3-11
Voice Memo	3-14
Voice Record	3-14, 13-27
Voice Recorder	9-9
Storage Location	9-31
Volume (S! Appli)	13-32

W

Wallpaper	2-6
Wallpaper (Edit Picture)	7-12
Warning	13-20
Watch TV	6-4
Weather Forecast	2-8, 9-23
Update	9-34
Weather Indicator	2-8, 9-23, 13-43
Web Page Operations	5-5
Web Search	5-9
White Balance	13-25
Wide View	13-3, 13-18

Word List	2-14
Delete All	2-28
World Clock	9-19
Rename City	9-33

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
----------------------	------------

Z

Zoom (Camera)	7-3, 7-6, 14-14
Zoom (Video Call)	3-15

By User Action

A

Access

Internet 5-3, 5-4

Activate

Barcode Reader 9-26

Music Player 8-5

Add

Country Code to Country Number List 13-22

Functions to Shortcuts Menu 2-5

Lifestyle-Appli to Balance List 9-31

Members to S! Circle Talk Members List 10-7

Members to S! Friend's Status Members List 10-4, 10-5

Phone Number to Auto Answer List 13-23

Songs to a Playlist 8-7, 8-11

Stamp 7-12

Text (Edit Picture) 7-11

Adjust (Speaker/Earpiece Volume)

in S! Circle Talk 10-8

in Video Call 3-7

in Voice Call 3-4

Answer

Any Key Answer 13-9

Auto Answer (Earphone-Microphone) 13-24

Auto Answer (Video Call) 3-13

Call Waiting 3-17

Earphone-Microphone Answer 13-13

Open to Talk 13-9

Response Time Setting (Answering Machine) 13-9

S! Circle Talk Call 10-8

Video Call 3-7

Voice Call 3-4

Arrange

S! Mail Text 4-5

Attach

Files 4-4

B

Back Up

Data to a Memory Card (Transfer All) 12-10

S! Addressbook Back-up 12-13

Setting Data (Relocate) 12-15

C

Call

Call Waiting 3-17

Dialed Numbers 3-12

Earphone-Microphone Call 3-13

Handsfree Call 3-14

International Call 3-5

Multiparty Call 3-17

Received Calls 3-12

S! Circle Talk 10-7, 10-8

Speed Dial 3-5

Video Call 3-7

Voice Call 3-4

Cancel

Alarm 9-18

Answering Machine 3-5

Card Reader Mode 12-9

Keypad Lock 11-3

Manner Mode 1-13

Mute 3-13

Offline Mode 1-13

Password Lock 11-3

Phone Book Lock 13-35

PIN Lock 11-5, 14-2

Remote Lock 9-13

S! Information Channel Subscription 9-23

Change

Alternative Picture (Video Call) 3-15, 13-23

Call Barring Service Code 3-18

Color of a Date/Day of the Week 9-28

E-mail Address of the Handset 4-3

File Name 2-31

Folder Name 2-31, 4-17

Font Size (Display) 13-5

Font Size (Internet) 13-21

Font Size (Mail) 13-15

Font Size (Text Entry Window) 2-27

Handset Code 11-2

Image Quality (Video Call) 3-15, 13-23

Internet Security Code 11-5

Message Box View Format 13-17

My Status 10-4

Picture Size 7-9

PIN 11-5

Playlist Name 8-7

Text Encoding Type (Internet) 13-21

Text Input Modes 2-9

Change Order

- Files 2-31
- Main Menu Icons 2-3
- Messages 4-19
- Phone Book Entries 2-29

Charge (Battery)

- by USB Connection 13-37
- with AC Charger 1-8
- with Desktop Cradle 1-9
- with In-Car Charger 1-9

Connect

- Dial-up Connections 12-14, 12-15
- Earphone-Microphone 3-13
- Handsfree Device 12-5
- PC 12-8, 12-15, 13-37
- USB Connection 12-8

Convert (Characters)

- by Single Kanji Conversion 2-26
- Determined Text (Reconvert) 2-27
- Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana 2-10
- Name 2-26

Copy

- Characters 2-12
- Class on Time Table 9-30
- Files 2-32
- Folders 2-32
- Message Text (Text Copy) 4-19
- Phone Book Entries 2-29
- Playlist 8-11
- Text String in Web Page 5-7

Create

- Folder 2-21, 5-9
- Phone Book Entry 2-16
- Playlist 8-7
- S! Mail 4-4
- SMS 4-6
- Time Table 9-7
- vObject 2-31
- Wallpaper 7-12

Customize

- E-mail Address of the Handset 4-3
- Original Mode 13-11

D**Delete**

- Alarms 9-18, 9-33
- Backup Data (Memory Card) 12-16
- Bookmarks 5-9
- Characters 2-12
- Classes from Time Table 9-7, 9-30
- Entries from Balance List 9-31
- Entries from S! Circle Talk Members List 10-10
- Events 9-5, 9-30
- Folders/Files (Data Folder) 2-32
- Members from S! Friend's Status Members List 10-9
- Messages 4-18
- Phone Book Entries 2-30
- Playlist 8-11
- Recorded Messages on Answering Machine 3-13

- S! Appli 8-12
- Server Messages 4-17
- Shortcut Icons 2-25
- Tasks 9-6, 9-30

Download

- Lifestyle-Appli 9-10
- Music and Video Files 8-3
- S! Appli 8-8
- S! Information Channel 9-34
- Software Update 14-6

E**Edit**

- Active Window Members List 2-26
- Bookmark Title 5-9
- City Name 9-33
- Entered Text 2-12
- Event 9-29
- Phone Book 2-29
- Picture 7-8
- S! Addressbook Back-up 12-12
- S! Circle Talk Members List 10-10
- S! Friend's Status Members List 10-9
- Task 9-29

Enable

- Active Window Operation 2-7

End

- S! Appli 8-8, 8-9

F

Format

Memory Card 2-24

Forward

Call Forward 3-10
Messages 4-18
Server Message 4-16

H

Hold

Hold Image (Video Call) 13-23
Incoming Call 3-13

I

Input (Characters)

° or ° 2-10
Alphanumerics 2-11
Beeper Mode 13-34, 14-10
E-mail Address/URL Extensions 2-12
Emoticons 2-11
Kanji 2-9
Line Break 2-26
Lower Case 2-10
Pictographs 2-11
Space 2-26
Symbols 2-10

J

Jump

to Specified date on Calendar 9-4

L

Light (Flash)

Charging Indicator 1-3
External Light for Incoming Events ··· 2-29, 13-6
External Light for Notifications 13-6
Mobile Light 7-3, 7-6
Lighting 13-5

Listen to

Voice Mail 3-11

Lock

Calendar Lock 13-39
Call Log Lock 3-15
Function Lock 11-4
IC Card Lock 9-12
Keypad Lock 11-3
Password Lock 11-3
PIN Lock 14-2
Positioning Lock 13-41
Remote Lock 9-13
Security Lock (Data Folder) 2-22
Security Lock (Internet) 13-21
Security Lock (Message Box) 4-17
Tasks Lock 13-40

M

Move

Bookmarks 5-9
Files 2-22
Folders 2-32
Messages 4-11, 4-19
Phone Book Entries 2-29
S! Appli 8-12
Shortcuts Menu Icons 2-25
SMS 4-19

O

Open

Ku-man's Room 9-27

P

Paste

Characters 2-12

Play

Answering Machine 3-6
Background Play (Multitask) 8-10
Files (Data Folder) 2-21
Music 8-4
Playlist 8-7
Recorded TV Program 6-6
Video 7-11, 8-5
Voice Recorder 9-9

Protect

Messages 4-17

R

Receive

- Messages 4-8, 4-16
- S! Friend's Status Notification 10-5
- via Bluetooth® Communication 12-6, 12-7
- via Infrared 12-3

Record

- Answering Machine 3-5
- Other Party's Voice (Voice Memo) 3-14
- TV Program 6-6
- Video 7-5
- Voice Mail 3-11
- Voice Recorder 9-9

Register

- S! Quick News Contents 9-22

Reply

- to Received Messages 4-9

Reset

- Browser Settings 13-20
- Handset 13-33
- Multi Selector 2-25
- Prediction/Conversion Dictionary 13-34
- S! Quick News 13-8
- Total Call Cost 3-16
- Total Call Time 3-16

Restrict

- Access to the Internet by URL Entry 11-5
- Call Barring 3-17

Resume

- S! Appli 8-8

S

Save

- Attachments 4-19
- Bookmark 5-6
- Drafts 4-15
- Events 9-4
- File in Web Pages 5-8
- Locations to Areas List 9-16
- My Details 3-12
- My Locations 9-32
- Number Memo 3-14
- Original Emoticons 2-27
- People to Active Window Members List 2-8, 13-44
- People to Recipients List 9-16
- Phone Book Entry 2-16, 2-28
- Phone Number to Reject List 13-9
- Saved Pages 5-6
- Tasks 9-5
- Words to Word List 2-14

Search

- Phone Book 2-19
- Text String on a Web Page 5-7

Send

- Mail Notifications 9-17
- Music/Video Files 8-11
- Picture/Video After Shooting 7-11
- S! Mail 4-4
- SMS Message 4-6
- Touch Tones 3-14
- via Bluetooth® Communication 12-6

- via Infrared 12-2, 12-3
- Video Call Image 3-7

Set

- Alarm 9-18

Start

- Navi Appli 9-14
- S! Appli 8-8

Subscribe

- S! Information Channel Service 9-23

Suspend

- S! Appli 8-8

T

Take

- Picture 7-3

Take Notes

- on Notepad 9-8

Transfer

- by USB Connection 12-9
- Setting Data (Relocate) 12-15
- Transfer All (Memory Card) 12-10

Turn off

- Handset Power 1-11
- IC Card Lock 9-13
- Off-timer (TV) 13-28
- Prediction 13-34

Turn on

- Handset Power 1-11
- IC Card Lock 9-12

U

Update

Mail List	4-16
S! Appli Information on Memory Card ..	13-32
S! Friend's Status	10-9
S! Quick News	2-8
Software	14-6
Weather Forecast	9-34
Web Page	5-7

W

Watch

TV	6-4
----------	-----

Warranty

A warranty card is included with the handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

- SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

After Sales Service

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 14-7) before submitting your handset for repair.

If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-41).

Repair within Warranty Period

Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.

Repair After Warranty Period

Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.

- During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.
- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data such as Phone Book data. SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data (contents of Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) and settings as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying the handset is in violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Customer Service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.









SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial
+81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial the correct number. International charges will apply to this call.)

Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113

SoftBank 921T Instruction Manual

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 921T

Manufacturer: **TOSHIBA CORPORATION**



モバイルリサイクルネットワーク
携帯電話の回収・リサイクルの推進

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

* Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.

* Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.